

The sixth Booke of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

Being

The first Booke of the third Part, immediat-
ly folloving the fourth and fifth
Bookes printed.

*Conteining the Knightly actions and
amorous conuersations of Rosicleer and
Rosabel his sonne, vvith diuers o-
ther their princely Friends
and Kinsmen.*

Translated out of Spanish by R.P.



L O N D O N

Printed by Edvvard Allde for Curthbert Bur-
by, and are to be sold at his shop nere the
Royall Exchange.

1598.

The first book of
the history of Knighthood.

Being

The first of the third part, immediately
following the fourth and fifth
Books printed.

Containing the history of the
various conquests of Robert and
Richard his sons, with divers
other their private friends
and relations.

Translated out of Spanish by R. P.



TOYD

Printed by Edward Allde for Christopher Bur-
by and are to be sold at his shop next the
Royal Exchange.

1688.



The Printer to the Reader.

Oft more than ordinarie, & trauell exceeding expences haue I bestovved to get together all the parts of this excellent Historie. If a quick Terme pay the expence of a dead Vacation, I vvill vvithin the month play the Conney, and bring foorth another Part: but if ye proue niggards to buy, vvhat I haue dearly bought to sell, I vvill learne of the Camell, to be three yeares in bringing forth my next birth, though I buy the long bearing verie deare.

Yours C. B.

A 2

The Printer to the Reader.

I have I beseeched to
gather all the parts of this
work into one volume. It is a quick
work, and I have the experience of
a dead vacation, I will not in the month play
the Conny, and being bound another time
but ye prove right to buy what I have
dearly bought to sell, I will leave out the
well to be done, yet in bringing forth my
next time, though I buy the long, being ye
the dear.

Yours C. B.



**The first Booke of the third Part of the Myr-
rour of Knight-hood: wherein is declared the high & might-
ie deedes of the Sonnes and Worthie Nephewes of Tre-
batio: & other mighty Princes & Knights:
With the valiant deedes of Knight-
hood of Claridiana, and o-
ther heroicke
Ladies.**

The end of that perillous and bloodie Combat between
Rosicleer Prince of Constantinople, and Fangomadan King
of the Forbidden Iland; about the libertie of Meridian
Prince of Scythia, Flöralinda Princessse of Macedon, & the
Trojan Oristides: and what after happened more to them.
Cap. I.

The Battell between Fangomadan
and Rosicleer continued with no
lesse furie, than that breasonable
begun Combate of the Lapythes &
Centaures, at the marriage of Py-
rithous, the Companion of Hercu-
les: and with like noyse, oz more
violence, did their stroakes redou-
ble one vppon an other; battering
and shiuering their armour, and staining the pauement
of the Court (wherein they contended) with their blads:
either so impatient of delay, and desirous to see the others
downfall, that they enuied at the breathing time, which
both their necessities made them glad to take. Yet (of the
stop) there appeared a greater and more apparant defect
in

The first Booke of the third Part

in Fangomadan than the Prince. For the Giant with his owne unreasonable hugenes and intollerable weight of his armour was most oppressed: and Rosic'eer by his agilite and nimblenes, had moze than ordinarie aduantage: neuerthales he entred not and retired so at his ease, but with his armours burden, the Giants blowes, & hys exceeding trauell, his flesh was greatly bzused.

At this time, two things much auayled the prince: the one the excellent temper of his armour, fashioned by the wise Artemidoro, the other his vnmatchable sword sent him from Queene Iulia: for no force had force to enter the armour, no: no armour had strength to resist the sword, especially welded by so strong an arme.

Two weary howers were past, when as these worthy Warriors (impatient to see their fortunes stand on such doubtful termes) with both hands met with their swords aloft, in such furious manner, that the Beholders (thogh some of them were vndoubtedly verie valiant) were so amazed, that their blood retyzed to their affrighted hearts. The Pagan was quicke in the execution of hys blowe, which was the cause that it did little offend his Aduersarie, onely it caused his eyes to flash fire like lightening: but the prince setled his blow so furiously vpon the Giant, that if his steely helme had not bene thre fingers thicke, it had parted his head, yet it made him fall vpon the necke of his Elephant, and Trebatioes Sonne redoubling another vpon him, Fangomadan had salne out of the saddle, if he had not pzevented it by crossing his armes.

This worthy Prince (descended from Achilles) might then haue concluded the Battle, when as the Moze was in this perplexitie, but hee would not, because it was against gentillitie and knight hood. Long it was not that hee paused, for Fangomadan comming to him selfe thre we from him that which remained of his shield, and with his sword in both hands went against his Contrarie: who committing himselfe vnto God, ran in with a thrust at him, & saved

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

saues his life, for that the Giant could not fasten a full blow on his helme, but it glaunced downe on the Horse head, which being parted in two, beaſt and Lord fel to the earth: which greeued Floralinda, who with her Husband from a high gallerie beheld this mortall contention. Yet went hee not without his payment, for there was no Enchantment could reſiſt Roſicleers Sword, nor the Guider of that well tempered weapon: but with vnmatchable force it paſſed through his gorget to his throte: which the Giant feeling, he gaue backe, otherwiſe he had preſently dyed.

Although the Sonne of Trebatio was aſt, yet did not his valiant heart faile him, but with a gallant demeanour he abode the coming of his enemy: in ſuch ſort that the Giant ſaid to behold him. The Prince ſeeing him ſtaye, ſaid: What doſt thou meane thou diueliſh Furie: to as becommeth a Knight, for in killing my Horse thou art by cuſtome bound to giue me another, or els to alyght from thine.

No ſuch curteſie (ſaid the Giant) makes me pauſe: but I thinke one of the Gods are deſcended in thy ſhape, but neither his nor any other force will deliuer thee from my deathfull reſolution. And therewith he would haue ouerthrowne him wth his Elephant: but the Prince ſtept aſide, & as the Giant paſſed by, he ſtroke him ſuch a blow, that the ſword pared away the armour and part of his arme: ſo that with great paine he was able to rule his ſword. Yet this trecherous Horse returned againe to ouer-run him, and the Greeke abode him with al the dexterie that might bee: and at his ſecond paſſing by, he aſſayled him as a tyger doth his pray, laying his ſtrong handes on him wth ſuch force, that he pulled his furious Aduerſarie quite out of his ſaddle.

The Giant ſeeing hee muſt fall, was ſubtle and cunning, and claped in the Prince, as the Que twiſteth about the Wake, becauſe that in their falling he ſhould not

The first Booke of the third Part

take anie aduantage of him, so that they came both to the ground : whereas might haue bene seene the gallantest wrestling in the world. For although the Giant were huge and deformed, our Knight was as well set and as strong as anie in the world, not being a Giant.

It gaue great content to the Beholders, to see what art and pollicie either of them vsed to get aduantage of hys Contrarie. The Pagan in this wrestling lost very much blood, and waxed weake by reason of the wound in hys throate : which caused him to let loose the Prince, whose flesh and bones were verie much brused. But seeing it was not then time to loose anie opportunitie, they returned to their Battell againe with so great furie and quicknes, as though it had then but new begun, till such time as verie wearines did inuite them to leaue of, euen for a little breathing : which was not without neede, for they had fought foure howers together, without taking anie kinde of rest.

Those that were present did verie much extoll the fortitude of the pagan, in that he could so long indure against the Prince : for that they knewe by experience how farre the strength of his armes extended. And the Prince vnto himselfe sought by what meanes he might ouercome hys Enemye without killing him : for that he seemed to be one of the most valiantest that euer he proued : and still hee thought that he exceeded the dexteritie of the mighty Gran Campeon, that was slaine in the Warres of Greece, by the hand of the said Prince. Likewise he remembred the manie and great affaires hee had to do in other Partes : but that which greued him most, was that so long time he had not heard of his beloued Oliuia. The which thought kindled in him such cholar, that like vnto lightening hee went to the Pagan, first demanding whether he would yeeld himselfe for ouercome, and leaue the Battell in the state it was?

But this blasphemous King with a voyce that feared them

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

them all said: This creature, is it possible that the Gods will consent being armed in the fildes, so poore a Knight as thou for pure sorrow and greefe should desire to leaue off the battell, and yet with me to yeeld as ouercome: I do now perceiue that all your deities are vile, and that your power is but small, that one alone Knight dare attempt to doe this. Come downe you theues from those celestial houses that you haue stolen and vsurped, and I will giue you to vnderstand that I am Pangomadan: And therewith raging like a Tiger, hee assailed that warlike Prince, and gaue him such a violent blow vpon his helme, that he made him stoupe and put his handes to the ground, and doubling the same he stroke him ouerthwart, that it descended on his left shoulder, which the Prince felt verie greuous, & seeing himselfe so intreated, considering with all, that the force of his aduersarie was increased, he beganne to hammer blowes on him in such sorte, that hee made him seeme all bathed in blood, puffing and blowing like a bayted bull.

The Pagan would haue giuen him a down right blow purposing therewith to conclude the battle: But the Prince beeing warned by that which before had passed, made shewe as though hee would abide it, yet when it did descend, with all the lightnes in the world he auoided and made him strike vpon the stones so furiously, that when the sworde fell it broke off a great peece.

This louer of Ohuia was not idle on so good occasion, but stroke the Giant such a blow and with such good order on his shoulder, that he did not onely disarm the place but also made therein a great wound, out of which began to flowe a great quantitie of blacke blood. And this victorious Greeke withdrew himself when he saw the wound he had giuen him.

It cannot be imagined what great anger possessed the Giant, for like vnto a wounded Lyon (although somewhat wearie) hee assailed Rosicler: who had no care to

The first Booke of the third Part

Strike him, but to delay him with his lightnes, for that he knew well it would shortly tyre him. And so using his wonted dexterity, he onely auoided the blowes of his enemy.

Those that were beholders hereof did well perceine the intention of this baptised knight: but yet he could not still so auoid it, but that the giant seized on him such a blowe, that he made him somewhat to lose his memozie, and to vaide bloud out at his mouth, the which Rosicler took to be perillous, and let flic thre or foure blowes on high to amaze his contrary, and therewith thrust at him with his sword in such sort that hee hit him on the thigh, and the point passed to the bone.

The Doye did not thinke it to be great, till such time as assaying to follow him, he fell downe vpon his handes, but he was not so soone downe, as with the quicknesse of his thought he was a foote againe, flourishing with his unmeasurable sword.

This valiant brother to the knight of the sunne could very well haue ouercome him in thus detaining him, but he sodainely conceaued it to bee cowardise, and therefore determined to put the state of the battell in one blow, and as the giant was striking at him a mighty stroke, he entered within him, thinking to ouerthrow him, but he found him like a rocke: therefore being together he gaue place to the Doye to benefit himselfe of time and occasion.

But the giant leauing his greate fauchion, seized on the Prince with his heauie armes, & rescued him in such sort, that it seemed he would breake all his members, so that they must needs returne againe to a perillous wrestling, in so much that with the heate of the battell and with wearinesse, they fell both on the ground, and inforcing one to get the other vnder, they both lacked breath and the giant bloud, through which faintnesse they both sounded, the unhappy giant neuer againe reuiuing. And this

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

is alwaies to be looked for of those, who liued as he did, making his owne content a God, and worshipping his onely pleasure.

All that were aboute woulde haue descended to them, but there was none that could forsake the place where as they were.

For that incontinent the heauen was couered with a thicke and blacke cloude, with such thundzings and lightnings that it seemed that all the firmament would fall to the earth, in the which was hearde the bleating of beastes and other heauy groanes in the saide courte for the space of one houre, till such time as the storme was past, and the heauens became cleare as they were before.

Nowe looking for the warrours they onely saue the Prince, as one amazed new come to himselfe, and as though his aduersary had been before him, he gaue assault till such time as he was wholy in his remembrance, and saw not the giant.

But that which grieved him most was that he lacked his good sword, which he won with so deare experience, as was said in the first booke. And looking about for the giant, he saue on the one side of the court, a sumptuous edifice like to a sepulcher, which was sustained with foure deformed Lyons made of alabaster, the Sepulcher it selfe was all of Christall, so cleare, that all might be very well seene which was within, and marking it well, he knewe that it was the bodies of the giants and their mother who laie as though they had beene alieue with their eyes open, and euery one a very long scrole or writing in their handes, which declared the cause of their deathes: but that which made the invincible Prince Rosicler most to maruell was to see his good sword sent from Queene Iulia smitten quite through one of the foure pillars that sustayned the couering of the sepulcher which pillar seemed to be of very fine Aspar stone.

And

The first Booke of the third Part

And hauing desire with great ioy to pull it out, hee no sooner layd hand on it, but there came forth so great a flame that it seemed to haue burned him, till such time as he let it goe againe, and then the griefe went away, and he saw hanging at it a parchment wherein was witten letters of bloud, which he could not stand to read, for that they did all descend and receined him, and asked him how hee did feele himselfe? But the excellent and fayre Infant, with a gallant and soueraigne behauiour said.

If you should haue hoped worthe Prince for my helpe, as you in descending to the battell told me, I feare me the Fight had been more dangerous: but thanks be to the powers of heauen, it was concluded by your owne excellent force. Nay rather Madame (said Rosicleer) next to the heauens haue your distresse and beauty praise for this unexpected Victorie: for by them was powerfull abilitie added to my weake strength to defend the one, and releue the other.

Let vs leaue this talke said Floralinda, and goe we to see the sepulcher, for I beleue you haue lost something therein, for that it seemeth the fire doth defend it.

Then said the Knight of Cupide, were the losse verie much, I should thinke it paid, hauing finished this aduenture for the liberty of the Prince your spouse, although it was not little grieue that my sword should bee taken away. Such deedes haue you done therewith saide the Lady, that I meruaile they did not take away your life, although I beleue to see you accompanied with so manie, they durst not.

They all laughed at that the Infant had said, yet they did grieue at heart for the losse of the Princes sword. And so they went with a great desire to see where it was, and beheld a maruellous Aduenture, for they saw in the Pillar five pommells of swords, euery one with his scroll hanging thereat, which declared whose it was. The swordes being one aboue the other, on the highest part was

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

was that of the Prince Rosicleer, whose scrole was written in this maner.

This was the sword of the Prince of Constantinople, Rosicleer, the which he lost at the defended Iland, putting to death with it Fangomadan and his sons, and shall here remaine till such time as the braue Tyger with the vntamed Lyones doth ouercome the guarders & keepers of my Castell, getting without armes or order of knighthood the entrie thereof, & for himselfe the two swords neereft, swearing to reuenge the death of the vnhappy king.

They remained all amazed to see the boldnesse of the writing, and reading downe lower the second was thus.

None be so hardy or bold with order of knighthood, or being a man, to touch the sword of the worthy Camilla, for that he shall remaine in perpetuall prison, till such time as the rigorous Lyones doth take him out, swearing in the handes of the furious Tyger the reuengement.

They were much more amazed at the second writing, in seeing that alone a woman and without armes was granted the sword. Wherupon sodaine passions came vnto the faire infant Florina, for her lost infants, doubting whether they spoke of them or not. But dissembling her griefe, they read the third which said.

The sword of the famous Telarmonio shalbe graunted vnto none, till such time as the hid and vknowne Basiliske doth descend from my dwelling place, and get the sworde without armes, and swear the like.

It could not but grieue the Greeke Prince in seeing that all those must be accompted with the other enemies: but animating himselfe he said, few armours they haue left
me,

The first Booke of the third Part

me, who againſt me hath fought ſo many, but there ſhall not lacke other to ſupply that of the firſt. And for all that they did importune him to take his eaſe, they could not perſuade him, but to read on the other ſcroles, which ſaid.

VWhen the ſwift leopard goeth forth of my delightful dwelling, and winneth the key of my Caſtell, then ſhalbe graunted him the ſworde of Aſtrusia King of the Medes, ſwearing in the clawes of the Owne, to procure my reuengement.

It ſeemeth vnto me ſaid the warlike Troian, that according as the wiſe man doth ſee we, there remaineth yet more warres for vs to end then thoſe that are paſt, for that he putteth five for one alone offender. It is not to be marueiled at ſaid Meridian, that when one alone is able to offend and defend himſelfe, the aduerſary ſeeketh many to aſſault him, but there ſhall not lacke other two to ſhut vp the number with vs, and to count vs ſo many as our enemies. It ſeemeth that me alone he doth threaten ſaid Roſicleer, and therfore I wil ſee the firſt ſworde that ſhal ſmite me, and reading it ſaid.

VWhen that the ſword of the famous and feared Milon, ſhal come into the hands of the hid youth, who in my dwelling was nourished with the furious owne, ſhe not knowing therof, then ſhall reſt the great wiſe man Gelasio Lord of the couered Iland, hauing for certaine the reuengement of his beloued ſiſter and friends that ſuffered by the handes of the cruell greeke. And thou worthy youth doe not forget to reſpect the couetous owne, although it be to thy coſt, for it will be the more for thy glory.

They coulde not vnderſtand any more what the writings did ſignifie. And ſo with great grieve vnto y^e Prince for his good ſworde they departed, Although he was cōſo-

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

ted to see that it should come to the hands of one that should pull it out or els die in change thereof. All were ioyfull to see the aduenture ended & they set at liberty, yet y^e wounds of the Prince was a grieve vnto the faire Floralinda who cured them iointly with her spouse, with whom he passed the time as you shall heare in the second Chapter.

The Prince Rosicleer was healed of his wounds, and gaue liberty to Brandafidell the sonne of Fangomadan. Floralinda declared to her spouse the losse of her sons: they all returned towards Grece. Chap. 2.

With zealous care the faire Princes of Macedonia did cure the wounded greke, and comforted the weaknesse of her beloued spouse with her presence, and would not absent her selfe til she saw him whole and sound. She greatly reioyced to see the knight of Cupide, vnto whom that she might shew her selfe thankfull, she cured him with her owne hands, and neuer would consent that any other should do it, for all his often modest desires to the contrary. Sometimes they would al three descend and see that faire castell, and passe away the time in the fresh gardens that were there, and often behold the superbious edifice and curious sepulcher which the pagan had. It so fell out that one day he being altogether recovered of strength, the prince Meridian calling vnto him his spouse & the Trojan Oristides, caried them to the chamber of the Prince, who was then vp and walked, although not out of his chamber, for that he was somewhat leane. He seeing them comming, receaued them with that gallant grace (with the which aboue all the rest he was indewed) and said vnto the faire Prince.

It well appeareth worthy Lady that you take liking not to come very often vnto my simple lodging, nowe those delicate handes hath so soone put me in such estate
C 2 that

The first Booke of the third Part

that I am not as I was wont to be visited. To whom she said, Sir knight if this way you will carry it, I wel could long ere this haue giuen you entire health, but I receauing content in your company haue delaied the cure: at which fault of mine, it seemeth you are malecontent, neither can I blame you, seeing the gallant Oliuia is not here by whome you should receaue all the contentment that may be giuen.

You doe well faire Princeesse said Rosicleer so to put it off, that I may more and more protest the seruices I haue sworne to the beautesus Floralinda, which if weakenesse hinder not, I wil on any occasion perfourme.

Cease now to talke of occasions said Floralinda, I knowe ye haue bene alwaies a professed seruant to faire Ladies, and therefore worthily were you called the knight of Cupide, and in their defences haue you shewen your selfe a second Mars. But tell me certainly sweete Prince, now Mars is vnarmed of his good sworde, were it not a faire sight to see Oliuia his Venus by his side? Impossibilities said the Prince are not to be expected, Oliuia is too farre from hence distant to be here with wishing: but should the knight of Cupide wish for Venus, she were not farre to seeke, Floralinda of Macedon beeing so nere. With your leaue great Prince said Meridian, if this be Venus, and you Mars, I dare ingage my honour the olde fable will proue false: for neither will you forsake Oliuia for this face; nor my Venus make Meridian Vulcan for your ba-
lour.

Let vs leaue these iesses said Floralinda, if we run into such comparisons: for if the Prince or I had that intention, yonder shines the same glorious Cie of daie that discouered to all the Gods the lustfull Mars and his faire minion in an iron net, and the same sun would surely shewe our sinne to all the earth. But the Grecian Prince wil neuer proue y Mars (said Rosicleer) nor Floralinda sollight a Venus. Enough, enough, said the Troian Oriftides, Meridi-

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

an is disposed to stand on nice termes, it was not long since he was otherwise imployed: but libertie now & the possession of his faire Loue, maketh him secure. The Greeke Prince hath lost his Sword, and his Ohuia is far distant, Meridian may therfore be much merrier than his famous Rescuer. Let vs intend our iourney towards Greece: and therfore worthy Knight of Cupide, dispose we pray thee of this Castle and the courteous Giant, as to thy bountie best seemeth.

I will giue vnto the Giant (said Rosicler) that which his bountie and vertue deserueth, being thereto vrged by Meridian, Floralinda, and your selfe. Therfore I praye you call him, that we may finish our affaires here.

The Nephew of the Trojan was not slothfull to fetch the Giant: who till that time would not speake with a nie, neither come forth of his chamber with the græse he conceiued for the losse of his Father and Brethren: & all that while his Sister did cure him, and giue him diet. He came in a gowne of russet valuet cut vpon purple, and the Giant Ladie with him: who although she was great, yet was shee well proportioned. At their comming, all the Princes arose vp, which argued in them great and high curtesie: and being all set againe, the Greeke addrest his talke vnto the Giant.

I do wel vnderstand (vertuous Brandafidell) that neither the death of your Father and brethren, neither to see your selfe overcome and in prison, and your Castle in the power of a strange owner, hath bin occasion to alter your heart: as one that knoweth vnto what man is subiect, liuing vnder the continuall chaunce and change of fortune. It shall not therfore be needfull for your comfort, to laye before you anie example of him, that in one daye was a King, and in the same was throwne into a cage or prison. This I speake (worthy Knight) for that you should accept this present fortune as a thing you looked for: and so you shall see that the euill shall neuer greue you, because

The first Booke of the third Part

it commeth as a thing expected before. The death of them all is a griefe vnto me, and I should haue been verie ioyfull, if there had bene any other meane to haue preuented it, but the imprisonment of these Princes being betwene, deserued that a better esteemed life then mine should be aduentured for their liberties.

It is now done, and there could be no lesse don. Therefore confirme your selfe vnto that which fortune doth offer which is the friendship of these Princes and mine: and if there be any other thing requisite and necessarie for the satisfaction of the dead, you are at libertie and Lord of the Castle as before, for that these worthy Princes doe thinke it conuenient, and seeing you are a neere neighbor vnto the Princes Countrie, acknowledge him for your friend, and he will fauour you in all he may. And in satisfaction of the pain and griefe they suffered in the enchantment & the losse of my esteemed sword, hee shall at our intreatie tell vs who is this great wise man, and where hee dwelleth, that in way of prophecie thus fogetelleth wonders. And therewith the Prince concluded his speech, giuing contentment vnto them all.

Then the stout Pagan answered, with a kinde of humilitie which proceeded from his vertuous disposition, I will not flower of knight hood, for this present nor for that which is past, newly binde my selfe to be more affectioned, neither heerwith more extoll the noblenesse which you doe vse, in doing that which is common to so soueraine a Prince. I liued in securitie and you being the victor, I cannot say I am overcome. And being conquered by those warlike handes, I do extende that nothing could to mee bee more glorious then to haue put my selfe in the field against him, that Mars himselfe dare not contend with. The libertie which you and these Lords doe giue, I so esteeme of it as is good reason I shoulde, but I woulde change it to wsoeuer, to be alwaies in your companie, and employ it (as experience should manifest) in your service,
while

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

while life lasted, ending therewith my swete bondage,
I acknowledge all you my kinde Lords and friends for
that you demaund touching the inchauntment. Many
dayes past, my mother did tell vs that in the Grecian
house was bozne my fathers death, and now it is wel seen
for that you haue giuen it him: and she said, that with very
griefe to see my father slaine shee should dye, and that I
shoulde see in her reuenge, running brookes of Grekish
bloud, for that she had an Unkle, the wisest man that is to
be found in all those partes, who neuer woulde carrie vs
to see his dwelling, which is called the hidden Iland, and
they say that it was neuer seen of any since he dwelt in it:
And that for this reuengement, he will ioyne together the
greatest part of all the Pagans, nourishing and maintai-
ning fise knights which shalbe those which shall sweare
the reuengement, to whome he will giue armour & horse,
wherewith they shall fight against the Grecian princes,
and that the sword of one of them should bee that which
most bloud shall shed, and it seemeth vnto mee that in part
it is performed, and I doe beleue that hee hath with hym
those youtnes. And at his departure hee tolde mee that I
should be constrained by the Grekish vertue to be on that
part, against whome hee will procure my reuengement,
which he calleth present death: and that I should remain
the keeper of this Castle, for defence of all such as shoulde
procure the aduenture of the swordes (for so the Castle is
called) and likewise that there shoulde bee heare in fast
keeping, two Ladies the most principallest in all the worlde
till such time as a Maiden childe in equall battel doth o-
uerthrow me, and he said that forthwith I should tell you
who it was. This is princely Lords, all that which I doe
know of this aduenture, or my euill fortune, for that I find
my selfe friend to the Grekes, and must see their bloudes
spilt for my cause, but in shedding of mine owne, and loo-
sing my life in your defence, it seemeth vnto me that I doe
that which I am bound to doe.

The first Booke of the third Part

All the Princes remained content with the reasons of this most valiant and new Greeke (for so we will call him from this time forwards) for that Lyrgandeo doth make of him great mention, comparing him with Brufaldoro, and saith that he did exceed him in strength, yet the Dexterity of the other, supplied his want of strength.

You haue well shewed herocall knight (said the Trojan) the noblenes of your worthie hart, for that you beare it so well against the variable chaunces of fortune: and there is no doubt you know that vnto whosoever she hath shewed her selfe friendly, she hath also made him know the mutabilitie of her wheele. And yet for al this the Greekes will not let but to be as they were, and to haue courage to oppose themselves against any in the world that shall offend them. For my part I account it glorie for them who like you haue obtained their friendship. For who is more bound to be their Enemye than I, in calling to minde that they rased my first Cittie, and killed so manie and worthie knights my predecessors as there perished: but now knowing their vertue, I see no reason but to imploye my selfe in their friendship. And therefore from this time forwards I doe receiue you into the number of the Grecian Band, and I giue my selfe to you for one of your most friends. Where with they embraced one another, there remaining betwene them such loue and friendship that insured to the death, as you shal vnderstand hereafter: and for his excellent vertues, they called the Giant, the Greek knight.

That day they dined altogether, and the Giants Sister was verie much comforted. But all dinner time the Princesse Floralinda (remembryng the losse of her beloved Chilozen) was so sad, that they which were at the Table did perceiue it, and with great instance requested her to tell them from whence proceeded that new care & griefe. Her Husband with the rest vrging her, she was forced to tell them. So beginning with a thousand sighes & chere

Calline

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Stalme teares which did solemnize her grieve, she said.

It well appeareth louing Lorde and husband to see you without danger, and at libertie, that it is the greatest content that can come vnto me, yet fortune hath bene so contrary vnto me, that me thinke I am not bound to giue her any great thanks, for you shall vnderstand that the fruite of our louing marriage, before I coulde embrace them, were taken from me, so that onely I know I lacke a Sonne and a Daughter.

The afflicted Ladie coulde not speake any word moze, neither had she any space, for that they saw the walles of the chamber to open, and there entred foure deformed serpentes, euerie one of them embracing one of the knights, leauing the Princesse all alone, whome a terrible and fearefull Wysson tooke vp in his clauwes, in such sort that the cryes vnto her louing spouse for help could not profit her, for that the knights were not able to moue from the place where the Serpents layd hold of them: which Serpentes seeing the other beast gone, let loose the Princes, with such grieve that they were readie to burst because they could not ayde and helpe the Princesse, neither sawe they any moze of the Serpents, but they found a letter vpon the boord, the which the Trojan tooke and read: the contents being as followeth.

The Letter of the wise Gelasio.



D the souereigne prince of the Scythians, and Rosicleer the Destroyer of my blood, with the rest of the new Greekes, health or hate. If his desire who with all his wisdom and arte doth strue to procure thy death, in satisfaction of that which thy vntamed arme hath done, thou needest not desire to haue the sight of thy sword, till such time as thou seelest the losse of thy blood, so that the hauing it at that time shalbe cause
that

The first Booke of the third Part

that thou canst do no more outrage. And thou Prince Meridian, shalt now pay my sorrow for my lost new wres, with like græse for want of thy beloued wife: untill such time as the furious Diuice doth ouercome in equall battell that new knight thy now friend, my vnworthie new wres, to whom I will adde no more græse, but that hee shall be ouercome in manner aforesaid. And thou Trepant shalt loose thy libertie, putting thy head in the power of thy most cruell enemy.

Gelasio.

With great paine this valiant knight concluded the reading of the letter, giuing shewes of the griefe he felt at his heart. Then gentle Brandafidel did comfort them, promising that hee would serue the Princeesse, with all things necessarie, and verie shortly disinchaunt her, and bring her forthwith to Græce.

This was a great comfort to the Princes, and forthwith they would not stay any longer in the Castle, whereas so many disgraces came vnto them, but being provided of horse and armour they tooke the way to Grece, verie much recommending the Princeesse vnto the Moore their friend, who promised vnto Rosicleer forthwith to become a Christian, and gaue him a sword one of the best in the world, which was that of King Portias, a great friend vnto the Greekes. And therewith they came to the Sea, taking their way towards Grecia, whereas we will leaue them, to intreate of the great wise man Gelasio.



Who

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Who Gelasio was, what aduventure brought him to the hidden Iland: and the reason he had to robbe and take away Infants. Chap. 3.



Y Du doe remember in the first part of this mightie historie, Rosicleer (calling himselfe the knight of Cupide) slew the furious Mandroco, nigh the Grecian Empire. This as saith the wise Lirgandedo (whom we do follow in this historie) had an Unkle, brother unto his Father called Gelasio, of high and sharp vnderstanding, as much giuen vnto studie as his brother was to armes. So soone as the newes came to Parato (for so was Mandrocos Fathers name) the griefe was such that hee dyed presently, Gelasio not being there, for that he was gone into Egypt to consult with a wise man, was notwithstanding sooth with certified thereof by the wise Lupertio (for so was the Master of Gelasio called) namely that all his brothers and friends were slaine, saving one nere kinsman his sister of a goodly proportion, the which hee brought with him in companie of Lupertio, and would not returne vnto the Iland wherof they were Lords: for that sooth with Trebatio did fortifie the same, but slayed them with him, till he had commended farther in his life, and he was so diligent that hee came to bee one of the most famous in Egypt.

Then sooth with making signes and configurations to knowe in what place he might inhabit best for to make reuengement and follow his Art, he learned that it hold he in the defended Iland, wherof was also a young Giant called Fangomadan, one of the most strongest amongst all the Giants.

The first Booke of the third Part

Hee forthwith concluded with him friendship, helping him with his learning, till such time as hee had brought himselfe thither and the Giantesse. And finding the countrey so fit for his purpose, hee wrought so much that thys fierce Giant fell in loue with his Sister, till they were married together: of whom he begate the Giants which were slaine by the Greeke prince and Meridian: who vntill that time did alwayes liue by robbing of the countrey, till such time as hee apprehended those princes, and put them in that inchantment. And straightwaies he departed from his brother in law, for that hee understood the destruction of his Castle would come, and ordained his habitation more inwards vpon the highest parts of the rocks in the most delightfull and freshest aire that was in the whole world: and he knew that hee who should race out his generation, should be the same knight that slewe the most valiant Mandroco. Whereat he felt so great griefe that he went about to preuent the reuengment, befoze the death of his kindred. At last by arte hee came to knowledge, that of the first and fairest Ladie that hee apprehended, should be borne a Sonne and a Daughter vnder such a signe and planet, that they should pzooue the most valiantest princes in the world: and how that in the parts of famous Assyria should be borne another prince that in force should be equall with the Greeke princes: and at the same time in Phoenicia another, and a fifth begotten by the mightie Sophy: all of such excellent valor, force and strength, that they should bee the parties able to pzoyme him reuengement.

When he had certaine knowledge of these things, and was assured that Floralinda was Fagogomadans prisoner, he tarried the time of her deliuerie, which chaunced vnto her with great paines and troubles: but all turned to her content, when shee saw the fairness of the Children: although this ioy endured so small a time, that the remembrance therof passed away, for hauing them in her armes, there

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

there entered in two furious Lyons with terrible roaring, and took them from her, leaving the feeble Lady with great griefe as you may imagine, to bee in prison without her children: of whom the wise man had as great care, as though they had bene his newewes. Yet to make them to be the more fierce and furious, they were nourished in hardnes, and giuen them mingled with their nurses milke, the milke of Lyons and furious beastes: and they were nourished in such sort, that the wise and learned man did recover a great part of his lost comfort.

He gaue them names convenient to the content of their parents, for the Prince they named the hidden Celnido; and his sister, Floralisa, whom others did call, the rigorous. For that til such time as she was wounded with amorous passions, she was very cruell, as you shall heare.

At the same instant in the figure of diuers beastes hee brought the other infants. The Assirian he called Don Clarissello of Assiria, who died for the loue of Floralisa, as you shall heare.

The Phoenician he named Don Argente of Phoenicia, & that of the Sophy, for that he was the goodliest in þe world, he named him the gentle Torisiano. Hee nourished and brought them vpp with so great care, that there was nothing too deare for their comfort.

The three infants were together, in places different from the brother and sister, who increased in fairenesse and wit, in such sort that the wise man liued the meriest man in all the world.

When they came vnto sixe yerres of age, it was a heavenly thing to see them by reason of their beauty, and either of them seemed to be of more yerres. They did neuer see the one the other, till they won the swords as shall be tolde you. He exercised them in learning, and all languages of the world, and the worthy Floralisa learned in such sort, that she grew equall with her brother. When they entered more in yerres he gaue them bowes to shote with,

The first Booke of the third Part

with, and some daies caried them to the mountaines, and had a great delight to see with what brauery they would attempt to hunt with their mountaine kniues, in this sort they passed their life in great delights. The brother and sister would neuer depart the one from the other their loue was such, neither could the one live without the other.

They called the wise man father, and so did the other Princes, who increased in like maner in all knowledge: and were brought up in the exercise of hunting, alwaies respecting them, as to such Princes it was conuenient. Aboue the two he did preferre the Asirian youth, who seemed to be no other but an angell in his beauty and soueraigne disposition. Unto them all the wise man gave hunting apparell, whereof they were very glad, for that they much reioysed in that life, and when they did kill any wilde beast, they brought it home with great ioy and content.

One day he would shew them the strange thinges of his house, and the chambers of the faire brother and sister: and for the same, the day before he invited the two Scythians to the hunt, telling them, that he would sende them to other newe places whereas was great store of venison.

So the next day, the amozous Delphian pastour shewing his face, the two well agreeing youtnes came forth with two pages which were nourished with them, of the most principall of the Scythians, the page of the Prince was called Atlante, and that of his sister was called, Severo, who caried with them somewhat for their sustentation for that day, for that they would not returne till the evening. Their iackets were of greene cloth of golde, cut upon white tinsell, and wrought with curious workes, but the Lady by reason of her haire wore a garland with an infinit number of pearles set with diuers colours, and a gallant quiver at her back and crimson buskins after the maner of the Spartans.

The

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The wise man seeing them in this order so gallantly
suted could not chuse but say. Oh Iupiter, I gine thee
thankes, for that thou hast suff. red mee not onely to see,
but to entertaine as my childezen, such deuine youtnes.
And he went to the Lady and said. Oh flower of all the
Pagans, where with can I pay the Gods this courtesie for
to haue in my armes the famer of the most brauest Lions.
Happie Gelasio that hath such a one, and happie age
wherin liueth such a Princeesse: Courage my louing chil-
dzen, for this is that which is needful for your shamed fa-
ther.

Wellbeloned father the Lady answered, we cannot
chuse but esteeme verie much of that which you haue done
in our nourishing and bringing vp, neither will my bro-
ther nor I imploy our liues but in your seruice, and ende
them in putting our selues in whatsoeuer danger for your
good. And if our age be sufficient to put it in practise, there
resteth no more but to declare how we may reuenge your
griefe, seeing it is all that remaineth, and what we can-
not performe it shall not be for lacke of willingnes.

I doe clearly vnderstand and know (answered the olde
man) that from such a heart as yours can procede no o-
ther intents.

And my seruices shall not be so small, but I will one
day deliuer you from death, which is but my duetie, in re-
ward of many things that you must doe for me, and now
it is time for you to know somewhat of the world. And
first of that which is bred in this hidden Iland. So bring-
ing them forth at the accustomed dooze, which opened
towards the sea, he left the to follow their game: the wise
man returning to that which hee had befoze determi-
ned.

So they went forth leading in a lease two moste
faire Irish Gray-houndes more whiter then the pure
snowe whereas wee will leaue speaking of them,
who quickned they, wanted pace, because that they
heard

The first Booke of the third Part

heard the roarings of wilde beasts, and taking that way from whence the noyse was heard. And now we will declare what hapned with the other thre Princes, whome the wise man called and said.

Louing sonnes, seeing you be now of good discretion, I must shew you the secrets of my dwelling, for the many things that you must doe for me. So taking the Asirian by the hand, to whom for his gallantnes he was most inclined, he brought them into the great court of the house, which was foure square, and compassed about with sayre gallerics, wrought with diuersities of workes. In the midst of the court there was a chystalline fountaine with twelue great spoutes of water, which running out orderly made a gallant consozted harmony.

The Princes did behold the strange worke of the fountaine recreating their sights thereon, but more admired when at the farther end they sawe a Nymph, that on her brest did shew five pearcing wounds, so cruell, that the entrance of the weapons were not closed, hauing in her hand a writing to this effect.

None howsoeuer valiant, hardy, bold,
Shall dare to taste the water of my fount:
Vntill the closed Scythian womb vnfold,
A light that shall Apolloses light surmount.

Valour and beauty shall his worke begin,
And all els faile that it attempt to win.

The Princes did not vnderstand the obscure writing. Then the gentle Torisiano said: of truth louing father we should receaue content if you would declare vnto vs the meaning of this scrole, or els tell vs how we may ease the grieue of this wounded Nymph.

Wellbeloued sonnes saide the wise man, the desire of things honourable, I do very wel beleue is in your workes: but the time and your tender age doth not consent

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

sent that you should now proue any aduenture, till such time as the faire Lyonesse, being chased with amorous heate doe come to drinke of this fontaine with the coste of her blood.

And so because they should not stay herein, he passed with them forwarde, and brought them into a faire quadrangle, so richly couered with gold, as heart could possibly imagine, hauing foure grates, which opened to a delightful garden, replenished wth so great variety of fruits that it caused great admiration: but much moze wondrous was the intricate knots, which were so curious that they rauished the sight of the beholders. All the quadrangle was full of figures, with Emblemes that declared who they were: all of them were the most famous Captaines and Emperours of the world.

There was seene the desired face of Constantine the great, and that of happy Alexander, the famous African with all his armour bloudy, yet gallantly inamieled: and in his countenance a certaine shew of his braue courage.

There was the hardy Paris topfull of his pray, which was so deare to Troy. Where the loued Aeneas with his sword in his hand ouer the rashe and vnadvised Turnus: nigh vnto him the amorous Hercules, in womans habite doing on Iole.

There was the mighty Theseus and in his hand the Cretane Ariadne: there the rough and strong husband in flames of fire, exclaiming on the shirt sent him by his Centaure-deceiued wife. And nigh vnto him was seene all the Grecian Princes, and the mighty Alicandro. The figure of the renowned Trebasto was in red armour, in such sort as he went out of Tynacria the great, whose aspect, was so maiestical, that these gallant & young youths staid there to reade his Poeme, which was.

Trebatio would not leaue this coast for shame,
Were not his lingring here his honours blame.

The first Booke of the third Part

There was next vnto him a sorrowfull Lady, her Mor-
to could not giue them to vnderstand what it did signifie,
but it was straight tolde them, not without great com-
passion of the Princes, promising her aide to her amo-
rous anger. Nigh vnto that was the three Lights of
knighthood, the great Alphebo, Rosicleer and Claridiano,
they were all touching one target which had this saying.

Three worldes for these three,
Scarce sufficient bee.

They seemed so goodly of disposition, that they gaue
high content vnto the Princes, and they were a grcate
while beholding their gallant and gentle countenances.
Not farre from this was the furious Tinacrian, in the be-
ginning of his knighthode, with an oze banke in his
handes, and a precious sword at his side, against a strong
knight, with this deuice.

Nor earth nor sea my fury can assuage,
Against each Element contends my rage.

This strange saying made them moze wonder then all
the rest, and asking who he was, the wise man told them
all his birth: and concluding with a sigh he said: Were it
not for him my reuēgement were certain, but this knight
without blow of speare or sword shall overcome him who
hath all my hope and by whom I doubted not to haue re-
medy.

From that they saw many knights, and because they
were known, and to auoid tediousnesse I leaue to name
them. At the farthest part of all the quadrant in a thicke
and delightfull groue, appeared two faire and gallant
youthes apparellled in greene, each of them with a knife in
their hands, stained with fresh blood, and each of them a
scrole shewing their names.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

On the first was writ Don Celthdo the hidden. And the figure of the faire Floralisa seemed the most excellent in the world, and by the gallant haire which was more yellow then that of Apollo, they perceaued and knew her to be a woman, and for her name she had onely these letters, F, and L. But betwene them both, there was a scutcheon, whereon was this written.

To change the sea is not sufficient,
But the greene earth shall streame with purple gore:
When the three brethren fierce and violent,
Intend their slaughters on the sea and shore.

As this gallant and gentle Assirian was beholding this warlike Princeesse, there increased within him, a thousand thoughts, and that alone sight caused that to succeed which seemed impossible, I meane the subiection of a hart more free then euer yet was knowne in the Assirian nation. And with great affection he asked of the wise man, who that deuine Lady should be? To whom Gelasio answered laughing. Loued senne it is not conuenient to know who she is at this present, to auoide the knowledge of death, before you see the cause thereof. But the time wil come, that you shal sweare in her hands my reuengement, and bow to be hers, although first it will cost you full deare.

A little more forwarde from those gallant youthees they saue painted vpon a sea stained with bloude this writing which the Phoenecian Prince read.

Mars ore the new world giues me victory,
And sweares no strength shall passe my chivalry.

With a gallant demeanour said the Phoenecian Prince, of truth discret father, there must be more experience of our persons ere we be exercised in the sight of such rigorous

The first Booke of the third Part

rous figures as these be: Let not this grieve you answered Gelasio, for he that did paint it, did not ground his painting vpon the worke, but vpon the deeds which vnto these three as a fauour from heauen granted them, shalbe attributed, being so many that the seas with spaciousnes shalbe filled with wonder, yet euery one for his part must enamelell it with some of his owne blood: And when this shal happen, the braue Torisiano shall lose his liberty.

At the end of all, he shewed a rough youth, one of the best proportioned in all that quadrant, although the last, with this device: his feete, were settled vpon a world like vnto a gloabe, all embued in bloude, as a victor thereof, and in his left hand a banner where in was this written.

Mars ore the new world giue me victory,
And sweares no strength shall passe my chualry.

In his right hand he had a sharpe dagger, turned with the point against his owne heart, with this writing.

What doth auaille my purchast soueraignty?
When of my selfe my selfe shall butcher be.

With a hearty sigh did the wise man solemnize the leaving of these Emblemes saying. Louing sonnes, this is he of whom I tremble in my hidden dwelling: This is he that together with his brethren, shall not care to give battaile to all the Pagan countrey: this is he whom I feare, to whom destiny at his birth did promise triumph and victorie of the vniuersall world: This is he whom the world shall feare, till such time as the little tame lambe shut vp in the inchated tower (for that she had him in his armes being a childe) he do acknowledge her for his owner, swearing at her first sight, that he is the same that so long time past was promised vnto her. So of this furious youth

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

youth I can say no more.

All the Princes exceedingly reioyced to behold so faire figures, and thought the time long to see themselves armed knights, to goe forth into the world to seek out such valiant youths, as were there sholwn, to proue themselves with them. And so being dinner time, they went into an Arbour, and Gelasio commanded their meate to be bzoght thether in such princely manner, as though they had been in their Fathers Pallaces. Dinner beeing done, they there passed away the day, till their wonted time of walking: Gelasio not suffering them to see the pallace, where as the Brother and Sister were: for that the two Princes Torisiano and Don Argente of Phoenicia should undertake shortly a great Adventure.

Now am I carried with a swift courre to the two gallant youths, the Brother and the Sister: who after the great roaring they heard, let slippe theyr greyhounds, and with their blades in their handes, they passed thorough a great thicket, and came into a Playne nigh the sea side: whereas they saw two deformed Satyres, who had slaine a knight that came thether in a Barke, at which deed the monsters (taking great content) made those horrible out-cryes, and detested roarings.

These two Princes verie much mused to see people of that shape, for that they had neuer beheld ether, but the Wise-man and their Pages: yet not forgetting the generosity of their courageous hearts, with their swords in their hands, they went against those diuelish monsters, as though they had beene verie well armed, and long exercised to their weapons.

Now want I excellence of Art to describe the heroiike resolution of this yong Princesse. A happie Satyre, that deserueth to receiue blows of so glozious a Damosell. The swift Chariot Diuer of the Sunne (sometimes the

The first Booke of the third Part

yard of Admetus, in his course, the better to beholde this battle. The deformed beast would haue caught her in his armes. But this Scithian Ladie would not giue him that fauour, which Iupiter himselfe hardly deserued, but put her swoord betwene them, and hit him in the best such a furious blow, that there issued great aboundance and flakes of blood. It seemed not strange vnto the Amazonian Warriour (equalling in strength the auncient Bellona) to see that great wound, which would haue caused a thousand faire Ladies to haue sowned: But shee who was bozne to giue it, did second another with such swiftnes, that the Satyre was not able to defend it, but she haue him a wonderfull wound vpon the thigh, which done she repayed with the swifnes of an Eagle, leaving her enemy very soze hurt.

So raiued am I with declaring the deedes of this excellent Floralisa, that I remembred not the new & scarce Mars her brother Don Celindo, whose battell was woorthy to be recozded by the deuine Pierides, or by some (if any such could bee) more excellent Poet that sense raiuishing Homer.

With an admirable swiftnes did hee encounter the other mightie Satyre, who with a knotty oake, stroke at him a wonderfull blowe: and this hardy youth without experience abode the same with such gallant semblance that Mars in his glorious Dye had enuie at it, and at the fall of that mightie clubbe, with a light leape on the one side, closing with him, he stroke him with his short swoord on his right wrist, that he cut it cleane a sunder, and the miserable Satyres deformed ryght hande and his great and mightie Clubbe fell both to the ground together.

The woorthy Gentleman seeing the good successe hee had against the monster, seconded his first blow courageously, and pared away a peece of the Satyres leg: the diuelish furie finding himselfe so wounded, would gladly haue

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

hane fled from the valiant Celindo, but his wounds weakened his pace, and the swift Youth fastened on him such and so many violent blowes, that the hideous monster fell groueling to the ground, with a most horrible & fearful crye.

At the same instant, the gallant and heroicke Princess his sister, had brought her aduersarie into like extremitie: for returning vpon him with an inuincible courage she wounded him so sore in his legges and thighes, that she had easie means by his fainting to cast a deadly thrust at him, which entring the bottome of his detested and hideous wombe, he staggered a while, and fell to the earth with a moze exceeding clamour, than his horrible & hateful companion.

At the fall and crye of the first Satyre, their two Pages came vnto them, and seeing the Princes against such dreadfull aduersaries, they fearfully exclaymed, making the most greivous moone that might bee, for feare of the danger that might ensue to their most beloued Lord and Ladie.

As sooner did the last Satyre fall, which the admyred Floralisa ouerthrew, but with angrie countenance she returned to the heartlesse Pages, and thus reprehended their cowardise.

What meane ye, you soft hearted and timorous wretches to vse these exclamations? what danger doo you see vs in, that you thus crye out? turne, and behold our faynt ouerthrowne aduersaries: where with turning about, the bodies of the Satyres were vanished, and an enchanted Castle erected in the place, with a pillar before the gate hauing this inscription.



The first Booke of the third Part

The Groue of Meruailes discoouered by the most excellent Brother and Sister, shall be here till the Owncce which was at the Discouerie, doth return and make entrie in companie with the furious Lionesse, and beeing plagued with mad ielouzie, doth seeke her remedie, making free the entrie to all with the rigor of her arme, and then shall euerie one know here, in what degree they are beloued: for so wil the ancient Medea that it should be,

And moze lower was this inscription wzitten.

From this time forwards may those that bee ouercome with loue, prooue the Aduenture of the enamoured, which was discoouered by the hidden Prince in his infancie and prime of armes, being the first blood that euer he shed, euen the blood of my Sagittaries: who shall neuertheles be the guarders of my dwelling house, till such time as returning to enter, they win the armes of the carelesse and loued Iason, wherewith hee wonne the Golden Fleece from the Ile of Colchos.

The Prince remained amazed to see the things that there hapned vnto them, and determining to returne for that it was late, they saw comming toward the in great hast the reuerend wise man: who they went to meete, and he embracing them said. O felicitie of this present age, with what praise shall I exalt the beginning of your most highest deedes, that euer were done by knights: in truth I know not how to perforce it with this my rude tung. But here will remaine a memorie so long as the World shall endure: and there shall not lacke Aduentures for any knight wherein to imploy himselfe, whosoeuer cometh this way.

So taking them by the hands they returned: and hee told them that there was an Inchantment, but hee knew not that they should discover it, neither that it was in that place,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

place, for that it was of more antiquitie than his. Yet
for all this, you shall not goe from hence (my louing chil-
dren, said the wise man) if all things happen not as you
desire: for vnto this and more am I bound: and so he car-
ried them home, leauing first (by his arte) on the pillar,
these verses ingraued.

Louers that long to know with what regard
Their deere lou'd Ladies them doo estima te,
Shall here perceiue their scorne or their reward,
To ease or end their sorrowes passionate.

This (as a glasse) to euerie Louers eye
Shall shew his Ladies loue, or iealozie.

Th'vntamed Hidden with the tender Lambe
First found this wonder and aduenture rare:
Louers may blesse the time they hether came,
For in this place, Loues chiefest secrets are.

Here shall they learne to flye and to pursue,
To craue and giue, to yeeld and to subdue,

This writing (said Gelasio) for a token of the high and
woorthie beginning, in which you haue made experience
of your valors. And I do not doubt, but they which haue
gotten such an Aduenture as this is, shall haue all other
affaires for their contents, although not to mine: but it is
so ordained by my destenies.

Discreete Father (said Celindo) the Gods wil not that
we should atchiue anie thing whercin wee should receiue
content, and the same redound to your discontentment, to
whom we are so much indebted.

If it were in your hands (answered the wise man) in
good securitie might Gelasio liue to see his reuengement.
But shortly Celindo shall you see that which hath caused
my paine, and parents death: and so shall you excellent
Ladie, but your affections shall be wounded, you shall of-
ten with death which will auoyde you, and flye good for-

The first Booke of the third Part

tune that shall follow you, yet your heroicke deedes shall win you immortallitie, therefore let not your hearts faile you.

And in telling them this, hee brought them vnto the chamber, which was of diuers colours: and in the walls innumerable precious stones so placed, that they gaue light to all the chamber. Round about it were diuers figures of Ladies, who in times past and at that time also flourished and were most famous. There was the fayre Iuna, and the constant Penelope with her amorous web: there was the affectionate Porcia, with so manie shewes of beautie, that it caused in the princes great admiration. Nigh vnto her they saw the negligent Egyptian Cleopatra, at whose fete were three Imperiall Crownes, wyth this saying.

Crowne, Rule, Fame, Loue, and glorions Emperie,
I fought, scornd, won, and lost ingloriously.

The next vnto her was faire Campaspe, with whome Great Alexander fell in loue: and she was hand in hand with beauteous Helena, who seemed to speake vnto Campaspe in this sort,

Once did my face consume Dardania,
When I was rapt by wanton Alexander:
But thine burnes him that burned Persia,
And of the vtmost Inde was Conquerer.

My Alexander was his Countries Fire-brand:
Thine burned others, but preferu'd his Land.

On the second side was the mightie Empresse of Constantinople, Briana: and nigh her the faire Lindaraza. The Empresse was compassed about with russet Crownes, betokening her troubles for Trebatioes absence: with thys Motto.

Croft

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Croft Loue embracing gentle Patience,
(Though long) at last receiues Loues recompence.

This is the louing Childzen (said the wise man) that brought forth the death of my royall blood : of her were borne those vntamed Lions, that haue raced out my Lynage.

More lower on the third side of that chamber was the faire Claridiana & the princesse Oliuia, with ioyous countenances in that they inioyed their desired Loues : and Oliuia seemed thus to say.

Thine is Alphebo, mine is Rosicleer :
Thine match to mine, mine thy Alpheboes peer.

They receiued great content to see these two Ladies, especially when they knew who they were, and what stout Husbands they had.

In the same quadzant was the worthie Arguifilora armed against the brauest Knight in the World, with her beauer by, the knight seeming to speake thus.

Beautie once Conqu'ror,
In vaine is Valor.

The knight seemed so beauteous, that the Princesse by his Figures sight entertained amorous affections, and asked of the wise man who they were : Hee answered, I am vnwilling (faire Daughter) to tell ye, yet I will satisfie your request. This Ladie is the worthie Queene of Lydia, beeing in the Field, shee will combate with Mars himselfe : and you shall haue no better experience of her valor, than to see her in Fight with this Knight of Tinacria, whom I most feare. It was oyle to the valiant Ladies fire, to heare the Lydian Queene so much praised.

The first Booke of the third Part

Then began to worke in her thought a thousand amorous conceits, proceeding from that sight: and shee pursued the most perfect Louer in the world, as shall be hereafter declared.

I am grieued (said the wise man) for you Floralisa, to see how you are entred into Loues sea, where faire weather is painfull, the tempest perpetuall, calmnes continuing with a thousand doubtfull hopes: and yet for all thys thou needest not feare drowning, though the Nauigation prove more violent than death. Oh poore Ladie, y neither thy owne beautie, tender age, nor strong heart can winne thee to leaue loue, but carelesly thou admittest entrance to thy owne care. Thou hast desire to loue, & wilt greeue that the reward will not be correspondent to thy entire affections: but be contented, such are the variable effects of furious Loue. Oh that I could saue and helpe thee in thy insuing paine and greefe. I doe foresce it so much and sorrow both so increase in mee to bitter it, that I must of necessitie passe from this place to the next roome: where I will shew you another excellent figure of a faire Shepheardesse. This the wise man did not for that the Ladie should lose her new thought, but that her Brother should beare her companie. So passing to the last wall, they did see so beautifull a Figure of the faire Rosaluria, in the habite of a Shepheardesse, that the tender yong Prince Celindo at that sight made her owner of his hart, in such sort as death alone was able to take awaye the thought thereof. At her feet was this saying.

Lowly habite hides not beautie,
Loue in Kings and Clownes doth raigne:
To win loue, and shew his durie,
Phoebus was a Shepherds Swaie.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

You may well believe that this new lover did reade it with a thousand colours changing in his tender face, at first rather desirous to be jealous, then fearefull, if he attained sight of his welbeloued: but before he can live with his ioye, with feare to lose her he shal see much of his blood spilt, & make his eyes cleere fountaines, hoping for a remedy at her handes that neuer accustomed to regard complaints. With this new imagination, they came vnto the last Lady, which was called Lindabthdes, who was figured within the enchanted tower, and at the gate a stout and strong knight assaying to open it: on which gate was this inscription.

Loue that liueth here obscured,
To these paines hath me inured.

The wise man did declare vnto them all the enchantment and that the knight was Alphebo, wherat they received new passion and griefe, but not in such sort that it did take a way that which they had before conceaued.

So they went out of that pallace with lesse liberty then when they entred. Now they receaued content to be alone, that before thought it death to be seperated. They loue solitarinesse wherein they finde ease to meditate of absent beauty, which but by figure they neuer saw: where we will leaue them till their fit time, for that we haue a large course to runne.

What happened to the Dacian Prince, Don Heleno, in France. Cap. 4.



¶ Left the Dacian Prince in the forrest of Ardenia nigh the fountaine called the Disamorous; because it chaungeth louers thoughtes. He satte vppon the sticke of a winde broken tree, tossing a thousand imaginations in his minde: For his Florisdama, he nowe lamented not, neither did Lydias

The first Booke of the third Part

beauty any whit disturbe his thoughts : but a fiery & high kindled resolution lifted vp the noble heart of this long distressed Dacian ; and of his solitary life , he was exceedingly ashamed. Now he determines to visite the courts of Princes that befoze frequented forsaken caues : he purposeth now to continue in peopled Cities , that not long since loued the inhabitable deserts. Hereto he was encouraged by infinite waighly and necessary considerations : first the long absence from his countrey , the disgrace he liued in with his friends, his rash and vnadvised abuse of the inuincible Emperour his Anckle Trebatio , which most of all he seemed to lament. Briefely our Dacian was vnlike the old Eleno , that made trees, brookes, beastes, foules, fountaines, secretaries of his vnseene griefes, but as one that had long bin captiue hauing broke his bonds & conquered his cruell master, maketh his voice the mirthfull expresse of his hearts ioy, that in his bondage had often manifested the moanings of his soule : so this Dacian that had long bene Loues prisoner, hauing now got freedom ; toke his Lute, his Lute that many times had yielded sad sounds to the wofull accents of his voice : and finding his musike in another key , he caroled out this ditty in Loues disgrace.

Let him that longs to know where loue doth dwell,
What God he is, what Lordly soueraigne,
Attend to me: who hauing learnt can tell,
His flightes, his shifts, his smiles, and his disdain.

His habitation is the fondlings thought,
His godhead forged, and his power weake:
Fled he will follow, flie when he is sought,
His praise alone doe fooles and madmen speake.
They that adore him most, yet terme him boy:
But I conclude Loue is an idle toy.

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

As he was laying downe his Lute, he saw a Damsell making great complaint, who hasted as fast as her paynyes could runne. The Prince purposed to stay her, being desirous to know her grieve, promising to helpe her in all that was needfull. So he went to meete her on his enchanted horse, and when shee came nigh him hee saide, Damsell, as you would that fortune should fauour you, tell me part of your euill, for I promise you, I will put my life in hazard to doe you any pleasure you shall lawfully desire.

Sir Knight I giue you great thankses (saide the wofull Damsell) for your gentle offer, for any of lesse courage then so noble a person as you seeme to be cannot help me: my grieve is so great, that whatsoeuer narration must be made in seeking remedy, it more and more aggrauateth it, for that my heauy lot hath determined the time so short, that within these foure daies of force I must meete with one in whom I may with security put all my hope: and I feare none can helpe me, but the Prince Clauerindo our Kings sonne, or the soueraigne Emperour Alphebo, his great friend.

And it hath bene told me, that he was scene and one of his mighty brethren here at the skirt of this mountaine: so I goe with all the speede possible, to see if I can meete with any of them.

Faire Damsell (answered the Dacian) I would gladly that you might meete with one of those famous Princes, but this is of certainty that where as I left them, you cannot come thither in one month, though you make neuer so much hast were ye better horse: but for the duty I owe vnto those knights, although in me there is not that force and strength that is in them, yet I will offer that little which I haue with so good will, as would your beloved Prince if he himselfe were here. Sir Knight good fortune reward you for that which you haue said, and vnderstand y it is so heauy a busines that if it proceed forwards,
our

The first Booke of the third Part

our Prince & his friendes shal receaue great grieve there, by: and seeing they are not here, whome I seeke, I will put into your hands the most lamentable aduenture in all France: but the Justice which you shall haue on your part, will giue you strength needfull, yea although the mighty Alphebo or Rosicleer should enter into battaile against you, they were not able to approue the accusation laide against the most vertuous and the unhappy sister of Clauerindo, Princes of France.

The circumstance I will declare vnto you, for in two daies we may returne into Paris.

The Prince receaued great contentment at the words of the Damsell, and to heare her grieve with euery circumstance he returned with her to the pleasant fountain, wherein his iudgement (and in that hee erred not) he receaued new life. And alighting there they left his horse and her palphrey to graze and feede. And they sate themselves downe vpon the fresh and greene grasse very nigh vnto the Chyristaline water of the fountaine of forgetfulness.

There the Prince, tooke off his helme by reason of the great heate, discovering his beauteous face, much bettered by his new thoughts, which gaue great content vnto the Damsell (who was of her selfe gracious) to see him so faire and young, where with she said, by God & knight with a better good will I committe vnto you my whole power for the battaile, for that I likewise am shee that must lose if any doe thereby, for I am assured that in him whom the heauens hath indewed with so great beauty, cannot chuse but be equall force and strength.

At other times those commendations of his beauty were pleasant to him, when hee felt the wrongs of loue: but now he only procured to fauour and helpe those that were in necessity of his strength, and regarded neither his owne face nor the brauery of Ladies.

Wherefore he said, You haue good security faire Damsell

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

sell in the confidence of your iustice: and my desire to helpe your right is no lesse then that, which should be don by those Princes that you so much enquired after: therefore without circumstance, goto the matter.

The Damsell answered: I doe beleue faire knight, that nothing can pzoceede from those hands that will not bzing content vnto them for whom they shall undertake combate: and I know your paines shall not be vngatefied, although those which are like vnto you doe expect no reward, but of their owne bounty, are Champions for the distressed.

Therefore gentle knight you shall vnderstand that at such time as our Prince was brought vppe with the vnkowne Emperour the mighty Alphebo of Trabysond in the ancient and well fortified City of Babylon, in company with that stout Brandizell Prince of Persia. The king our soueraigne liued in the greatest grieve y might be imagined, for that he could not know nor vnderstand where his childe Clauerindo was.

For the Quene his mother in that she had no other, and he also her first borne it is not to be doubted but that she loued him as her selfe, and that his absence did griene her very soule.

They passed with this grieve till such time as the high giuer of comfozte, did bestowe on them a daughter so abounding in fairenes and beauty, that she was holden for moze then humane.

This was an occasion to lighten their age, and to ease their grieve whereby they might the better suffer the absence of the Prince her brother. They made great reioicings at her birth, and there came thither (as was reason) all the friends & vassals of Oristeo the King of France, (for so he was called) to celebrate that happy day, & giue great honour to the Quene Olinda.

The Parents receaued as I say some comfort in possessing such a daughter, for the losse of the Prince.

The first Booke of the third Part

And faire Grisalinda (for so is she named) as she increased in yeres, she grew so excellent in beautie, that she is esteemed for one of the fairest that liueth within the vniuersall world.

Now Fortune (to shew all her bounties at once) brought the Prince accompanied with the Persian into France, vnknowne, and they were called the knights of the Flower de Lucis: and they did such worthie deedes in the Countrey, that it seemed impossible they should by humane persons be performed. Within a while they entred into Paris, whereas they sustained a long and dangerous Iustis: in the which our Prince slew a strong and mighty giant, which done, they made themselves knowne. At whose discouery (faire knight) I leaue it to your discret consideration, if the Prince were receiued with ioy or no, for whose absence there was such discontentment. Forthwith they went to see their friend of Grecia, whereas Clauerindo was married with the sister of y^e said knight, who was called the faire Lindaraza, and she was deliuered of two sonnes at one birth of so excellent beauty being children, as was the Prince their father. Who to giue contentment vnto his auncient parents, sent to our king one of the children, with whose presence, the grandfather and grandmother were almost ouerjoyed, and rested not in giuing thanks vnto God, by whose meanes there came vnto them that great benefitte: hee was nourished and brought vpp in the court as the sonne of so worthy a father, and was most curteously vsed of this faire and vnfortunate Aunt.

Now at this time fortune waxing weary of so long enduring ioy, began to returne to her accustomable change, and would now in the end of our Kings daies, determined to bere him with the greatest disgrace in al the world. And thus it grew.

By reason of the comming of the Kings young newew, there assembled together much people, amongst whom were

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

were certaine of Alexandria; who with moze than ordina-
ry eyes did behold the beauty of Grisalnida our Princesse,
and did publish the same vnto their Prince: who being a
young man, and one that knewe what belonged to faire
Ladies, demaunded of them in moze particuler, and their
description was such a bait, that it wholly concluded to
subiect this passionate yong Prince, who onely by hea-
ring did affect her in such sort, that he did neither sleepe nor
eate without imagination of his Lady. Till such time
as his passion increasing and his senses fayling, he was
brought very lowe, insomuch that for his comfort they
caused a painter (an excellent workman) to offer himselfe,
that he would draw her counterfeite, who gaue him great
thankes, and esteemed it as was reason.

Into France came the iudiciall workman, no whit in-
feriour to Apelles, and tooke the counterfeite of the Lady,
with such art and curiosty, as it seemed the heauens had
communicated their life giuing power vnto his working
hand. And forthwith he returned vnto his Lord, who
iudged the smal moment of his tarying to be many yeres,
till such time as he did see the faire face of the Princesse,
which was a newe inticement to his prepared heart: in
such sort, that what he thought would be a lightning or
ease vnto him, fell out to be the increasing of his grieue:
and in such sort the amorous passion did lay hold on him,
that he left Alexandria pretending to go see an vncle of his.
With whose counsell and determination they departed in
the habite of merchants, and came into Paris to the feastes
that were made for the entertaynement of the prince. The
iewels they brought was the occasion that the Princesse
and her Damselfs sent for him to buy them, and made
the price at their pleasures, without contradiction of this
merchant who without seeing her, at the first report did
yeld her his hart: & therfore he regarded not his precious
iewels. It was a thing worthy to be noted, to see what pas-
sed about the buying of his iewels, and I as an eye witnes
can scarce beleue it, although I saw it.

The first Booke of the third Part

To conclude, he with the price of his iewels did see at his pleasure the owner of his free will, remaining there with great content, glad that he employed his thought in such a place, counting it a rewarde sufficient for all his wealth.

In briebe he departed from thence very beauly, and to remedy his griefe, he had the courage to put in practise such a thing, which to thinke vpon I am afraid, much more affrighted when I sawe it done. And this it was, he hauing a confidence in his beauty, wherewith indeede he was much indebted, put himselfe in womans apparel, and seemed therein as beauteous & gallant as our Princeesse. Oh how many times worthy knight did I confer and was conuersant with him in that fained habite, taking such content when he entertained vs, with his singing and playing, as was sufficient to bring him to be the most priuate Damsell that attended our Princeesse ouer all those that waighted in the court, he neuer shewing any suspicion, that should offend the honour of Grisalinda.

Being in this content, it fortun'd there came to the court the fearefull Partornio King of little Brittain, a young knight, and the most valiant that is to be found in all these parts, who when he came made shewe of his great valour. The King who knew how to entertaine and honour such, did lodge him in the pallace which was the occasion he often frequented to my Lady and mistresse and conferred with her publikely, but neuer could haue opportunity in secret. To be short he grew amorous of her, with such seruency, that he yelded himselfe to serue her although the vertuous Lady did giue him to vnderstand, by neglecting his seruices, that he should not weary nor trouble himselfe, & that it was labour lost he not being such a one as shee could affect seeing his huge greatness: for although he was not a giant, he was very little lesse.

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

Yet notwithstanding this blinded youth alone to himselfe became so passionate, that although we did not know the occasion yet we did see the effect that wrought in him, for he began to lose his beauty, and to go continually in habiliments of sorrow.

You may imagine Sir Knight (if you have ever loved) in what estate this amorous young Prince was: and so weak he grew, that he kept his chamber, and (among other) was in curtesie visited of our most gentle princeesse. At whose entraunce, blood retying into his pale cheeks from his reuiving heart, he took her aside vnto a window & besought her to sit downe, and by her sight to giue ease vnto his sorrow. The modest Ladie with bashfulnesse graunted his request, and desired him to be bryefe. Who preparing the passage for few wordes with a million of broken sighes, confusedly deliuered his affections, and abruptly desired her fauour: begging with a piteous looke a kinde reply.

To this vnluckt for request the princeesse graciously answered, (because she would not adde sorrow to his grieffe) willing him that he should not despaire, though yet she were able to giue him no signe of hope: her minde being subiect to no passion, but vterly vnacquainted with the thought of leue. So taking her leaue, shee felt Partomio in some hope, insomuch that he soone recovered his wonted strength.

But the princeesse hating his importunitie, determined (while he remained in the Court) no more to come publicly abroad, but kept her chamber: and when Partomio offered to see her, she would in no case be visited. For which he conceived such hate against the Princeesse, that without any respect of knighthood, or his ancient royal parentage, trusting in his owne force and strength, he came to accuse our Princeesse of treason and disloyalty, and that she had little respect to her honesty and honour wherunto she was bound.

The first Booke of the third Part

The King of force must glue care vnto it, for that hee was a King y made the accusation. When we vnderstood the manner thereof, it is not bee beleued what great lamentation we all made: for that it is a law in the Kingdome of France, that if the Woman accused of vnchastitie within thirtie dayes bringeth not one or moe which will defend her honour, shee shall at that time bee consumed in fire.

I will not (for auoyding my owne grée) detaine my selfe in telling you how her Parents did take it: but it seemed that all the Pallace was on fire, by reason of y great lamentation which was made, for that fiftene daies were past, and there was none so hardie as to appeare for her, they so much feared that vnreasonable knight. Till such time as the masked Alexandrian did talke with his Lady, befoze he went about to accomplish the same.

I, who knew the tract of them, for that my Distresse had made me acquainted with his secret loue for to her he had discovered himselfe, heard her answere, which was to dissuade him from that danger: but no request could perswade him to leaue off that difficult aduenture, replying vnto her.

Now Ladie and Distres, shall you liue in securitie of my honourable and vnspotted affection: for that it constraineth me boldly to aduenture my life for your vnstained honour.

Then said the Princesse, if in yeelding mine agayne were a satisfaction, assure ye Prince Arlando, I would doe it. But if you loue me, you would not haue anie liking, that with the price of my fame I should pay so great debt. Touching the battel, which you intend to attempt for my honours defence, I appeale to your owne selfe, that haue tried my vnspotted chastitie. Yet I vrgs not this in my owne behalfe, but it is anie knights dutie whatsoeuer to helpe a wronged Ladie that standeth in necessitie with his sword.

This

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

This couragious Youth was some what comforted, although he little enioyed that comfort. for the furie of that vntamed King required a greater resistance, although the battell was verie well fought: but in the ende he tooke away his life and loue at one instant: wherwith the græse of our Princeesse increased the moze, who from a high gallerie sorrowfully beheld the mostall contention betweene the two louers.

Whce then well vnderstood that the Pagan would goe thorough with his businesse, that so soone had cleared & freed himselfe of the Prince, in whose death she would haue been a companion: not for that she loued him, but to ende her trouble and græse.

Now I would you should consider what the sorrowfull Princeesse suffered, who liuing in hope from the 18. daye, (on which wee sent out a Damsell to seeke her worthie Brother) till this, which is the 24. and yet she is not returned. I know not anie so hard hearted, but would take compassion of so vertuous ladie, that so vniustly doth suffer affliction. Therefore (faire knight) I seeing the o. her Damsell returned not, imboldened my selfe in the right and iustice of this poore Princeesse, to put away all childish and womanly feare, and come forth into these solitarie wayes, publishing my misadventure. And now seeing I haue no reason to doubt, hauing met so gallant a Warri-er as (it seemes) you are, I will not lose my hope, but see how your worthie arme wil returne vengeance for the infamie of that poore ladie. And hauing so great equitie on our behalfe, there is no doubt it wil little auaille the vniust and proud accuser, though his huge proportion & strength were doubled.

Heere you vnderstand (sir knight) the assured cause of my lamentation, which deserueth to be pittied the moze, in regard of the floods of tears, which euerie day are shed in the wofull and afflicted Court of France. And if (as most constantly my minde perswadeth mee) there bee
in

The first Booke of the third Part

in you the valor which appeareth by that worthie countenance, Fortune can neuer offer you so good occasion as this to shew it.

Here the heauie Damsel stayed, ending her talke with a thousand sighes, accompanied with pearly teares that distilled downe her cheekes: which caused great compassion in the free breast of the Dacian Prince, who answered,

Of a truth faire Damsell, you haue reason to seeke punishment for so great an euil as this is: for there is no credite to be giuen to so vnreasonable a Knight as that false Dagan, especially against the Daughter of so great a King. But sure it grieueth me, that she suffered the amorous yong Prince of Alexandria to enter into that deadly combat: although not long since I did know a Knight, that would haue enuied him, for to haue ended wth his death a great number of griefes, that by his meanes hee suffered. But for the principal matter, though I loose my life in seeking to defend your Ladie, I doe accomplish no more than that which I am bound vnto: and now seeing it is more than time that we were on our way, let vs trauell forward, for I hope to giue comfort vnto the Prince. And therewith he called his Page Fabio to bring to them his horse and the Damsells palfrey: and leaping into their saddles, they tooke the direct waye towarde Paris.

This furious Dacian trauelled on a better horse than anye of the feedes of Titan, who in their course doe compass daily the circle of the Earth: the French Damsell carried his helme, as well to honour him, as for the desire she had to behold his excellent beautie. And as they rid, she noted the Device vppon his armour, and getting him a discontented Louer, with some graue at his sorrow she said.

In truth sir Knight, if your Mistres bee the occasion that you beare this sad Device, she is without reason, in that

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

that she hath not attained to know the much loue, which the proportion of your person deserueth. Wherein iudge I that she is in fault, because it seemeth vnto mee that you lacke nothing to make you a perfect Louer, but some experience to make you shew the strength that Loue requirereth, and follow the fashion, which courtly Ladies in that case expect.

At another time could this gallant Youth haue answered with more passion than now, when as his liberty was in the handes of them that made a test of it: but finding himselfe more at ease, he answered.

Of truth faire Damsell, you had reason to say, that it is more needfull to haue strength than anie other thing against this furious frenzie of Loue: for that I had a friend who while he thought to haue cure in loue, found first the ouerthrow of reason, inforcing his sense contrarie to that which he willed, rather than vnto the good which was ordeined: although I now can boldly say both for him & my selfe, we know not to what part of loues rules to incline our selues.

Then it appeareth that you are not amorous sayd the Damsell.

So verily (answered the Prince) for that I could neuer know what it was to bee beloued: therefore as I neuer enioyed the name of a beloued, I hate longer to be called a Louer, for that he is not equally to bee iudged wise, that passeth his time celebrating alwaies with ioy & euening of death: but rather I account him that liueth in this sort, a wilfull foole than a discrete louer. For each man should indenuour to lessen his greefe, and cheere vp his fainting spirites, scorning to hope for or couet that desired gold which onely couereth the bitter pilles, that by their hateful operation purge the sense of all reason and vnderstanding.

The Damsell speedily to this thus replied. In another Schoole haue you learned this erronious doctrine, &
not

The first Booke of the third Part

not in Loues Uniuersitie at Paris, which througħ all the world is so much esteēmed. I am sorrie that I carry with me a Knight, which esteēmeth not a Louer to be most discrete. What creature haue you in the world that liueth without loue? What picture doth giue contentment to the eye, if (by the beautie) the beholder presume not that the painter was enamoured of his worke, vñg affection as his pensill. It is well scene that where loue dwelleth, gentlenes and valor haue their habitation. What hath been the occasion that the Greeke Princes haue filled the world with their wortheie actes, but that they haue been amorous?

Against these faire Damsels (answered the free Dacian) my iudgement reasons not, for that loue did giue them alwaies abundance of assured hopes, easing therein and lightning the excessive paine which the disdained Louer doth receiue. But the accustomable conceipt raigning among beloued ladies, is self opinion of their own worth, a souereigne desire to be faithfully serued, a glorie and pride in their Knights valor: but when the full payment of his deserts (as a true fee for Knights service) is required, then is the Ladies beautie muffled with cloudy discontent. If she speake, she checkes his audaciousnes: if she looke, she darts vengeance from her eyes: and all the reward the Louer hath is this, that others pittie him, and are eye-witnesses of his true service: which she wil scarce vouchsafe to acknowledge.

This grieueth mee more than the rest (sayd the gracious French Ladie) to see how you are utterly false out with loue, in that you cannot obtaine to be the onely cheefe in account for the service of Ladies. Tell mee (I praye you) is it not a high reward for a Louer, to haue one gracious looke from his beloued Ladie? nay, is it not a salue for manie sustained sorowes, if hee but once attaine her desired sight?

Yes, it were well (answered the Prince) and excellently

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

lently for a Louers contentment, to passe the heate of the day priuately in such contemplation, where the Gallant may (without let) salute his Distres: but when such audacious entrie is made without the ladies special license, I doe iudge it to be one of the most errours which is committed in the ordinarie erring Schoole of Loue. But let vs reckon the best meede the Louer hath for all his mony. Doth shee bestow a smile? Oh then hee is a happie man: that one false sunshine is a sufficient comfort against manie bitter showers: but if shee vouchsafe a kinde word, a gentle touch, or some little idle conference, our kind yong luer is transported beyond all compasse, hee wrytes pure Castalian, walkes nowhere but in Tempe, dwells with the Muses, sings with Apollo to Pæans in Loues praise. Anone (in the midst of all this iollitie) on goes his Ladies frowning kercher, and then his Eulogies are turnde to Elegies, his mirthes to moane: an vncouth caue couers his disgraced head, a darke and queachie groue his pleasant garden, the aire his counsellour, Eccho his scoffer, teares his drinke, care his food: and such a deale of foolerie vexes this louing foole, that I must needs conclude him to be either desperately mad, or (questionlesse) a verie Fevot. Wherefore of Loue and Louers this is my absolute iudgement.

Loue is a busie troublous foolishnes,
Those that commend it, mad and reasonles.

With this amorous conuersation they traueled toward Paris, when vpon the right hand of the Forrest they heard the swift running of a horse: who came in such hast, that befoze the Prince could put on his enchanted helmet, the furious Rider was in sight, who seemed rather a Diuell than a Knight.

The first Booke of the third Part

The occasion thereof was the reflection of the Sunne upon his armour, which was of shining Steele, and colored blacke, and so was his horse, who made no shew of steps upon the grasse whereas he trode, by reason of his swiftnesse.

The gallant demeanour which this knight shewed, did giue great content vnto the Dacian Prince. And here we thinke it good to leaue him, with earnest desire to knowe what that knight was: and wee will get before him to Paris, where we left the couragious knight of the Images, Torismondo, Prince of Spaine, who was healed of his wounds, but not of the græse he receiued in the battel with the mightie Alpbebo.

This Torismond went out of Paris with purpose to seek some of his owne people, and till he met them, to trauaile a few daies in those mountaines, and to conclude manie aduentures: so that in Paris there was no other talke but of the knight of the Images.

As he trauelled, he oftentimes sent vnto the Court, to know and learne some newes of his Ladie by the Postes that came from Spaine, and oftentimes he tarried for his Pages returne at the Fontaine of Merlin, being the resting place for knights aduenturers, traueilling in that Forrest.

One day as he was expecting newes from Spaine, hee saw his Page comming with a countenance different from that he was wont to haue, for that he came making of great lamentation: which caused some suspition in the amorous Spaniard. For alwayes a timorous heart touching a mans owne euill, doth prophesie (as it were) in-
suing mischief, as to affrighted Torismond at this time it proued, who gazing stedfastly on Arfilo, thus questioned him.

What meaneth thy sadness Arfilo, haue the heauens deprived me of all my good, and left poore Torismond to lament his Ladies absence?

This

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

This youth did confirme his suspition in that he did not answer one word. The Prince as one wholly beside himselfe, said, ah fortune, thou hast now shewed thy selfe who thou art, now I feare not thy strength, for that which I most feared, with all thy malice is certainly befallen me. Conclude Arfelo, & declare vnto me these newes that must redowne vnto my death. What should I say soueraigne Prince (answered the page) but that it is as you suspect? death, pale meager death hath seized our your soules content.

This amorous and afflicted youth did not heare the rest, for that he fel vpon the grasse without any sense or feeling, til such time as his page brought him to himselfe againe.

Who in recompence said vnto him. Oh unfaithfull, why hast thou called me from my ease, what doest thou imagine that there is strength in me to liue, without the life of her, whom rigorous death hath taken from me? I cannot nor I will not although I may liue, being without that good, which was my comfort? How can he liue that only did sustaine his life, in yeelding it into the handes of her who did receaue it with equal comfort. Oh my chiefe god, because I should know the despight of fortune she hath taken thee from me. Oh deere deere loue, how I doe number my wants, exceeding all number with the onely lacke of thy soueraigne beauty. Oh mournfull earth wherfoze beginst thou not to lament thy lost ornament, for my losse reacheth farther then the griefe of unhappy Torismondo. Oh warlike Spaine, how maiest thou from this time forwarde leaue off thy glorious name, for that she who was the cause of al your courage is now conquered, by al deuouring death. Oh worthy knightes with what reason may you from this day forwarde liue without courage, since she who with her beauty did recreate you all, faire heauen hath toke away that heauen might be onely faire.

The first Booke of the third Part

Oh deuine Floriana thou art a creature ordained to ex-
toll the cunning worke of humane nature, but the dieties
enuying that earth should beare such perfect excellence,
found meanes for to vndoe so perfect a figure, carrying
with it all the grace, beauty and perfection of the worlde,
ioyntly with the soule of this unhappy body. You ladies,
that were enuious at the brauery of mine, fortune had com-
passion of your griafe. Thou hadst reason diuine Floriana
to remaine doubtfull of seeing me at thy departure. How
often didst thou vrge me with my plighted faith, the which
I will keepe till such time as I am in thy estate, without
any feare to lose thee, but to see thee with these eyes, wher-
with I now doe celebrate thy death. Oh most happy land
of Cantabria in times past, pittifull to my lamentations,
how maiest thou from this day forwarde begin to mourne
for the lacke of such a Lady and Mistresse? Now my lo-
uing father, may you liue content with my fortune, to see
me liue without my Floriana, who was so odious in your
eyes, for that I loued her. I am vexed still that you doe
not conceaue it was life to me to loue her, and a sweete
ease to suffer for her. Nowe hers I sweare by my high
thoughts, not to returne to Spaine, but to destroy it once
again, if any therein were the occasion of the death of
my loues life, although it were my naturall father. Oh
my Floriana, what can I doe to liue content, or who is a-
ble to giue it me but death onely: the which if I suffer for
thy sake, I will receaue it gladly. And hauing a despe-
rate wil, he pulled out his sword saying. Oh happy sword,
being the sword of my Goddess: with thee at her hands I
receiued the order of knighthood: I sweare by her beauty
that none shalbe able to disturbe me, til this unhappy bo-
dy doth accompany her in death, that did giue it so excel-
lent a life. At that instant he would haue lifted vp the skirt
of his shirt of male, to haue thrust his sword in thereat, If
the discret Arfilo had not thzown himselfe before him, and
pulled it out of his murdering hands.

Then

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

Then this grieved youth came to himselfe and saide: Oh my Arfilo, is this the loue you beare me, to hinder me that I go not to accompany in death, that which neuer departed from me liuing: my friend permit it as thou wouldest the heauens to be moze fauourable to thee, then they haue bene vnto the sorrowfull Torismundo.

Worthy Prince and my Lord (answered the discreete page) I should offend much therein, in the duety that I owe vnto you and your generous father, and you offende moze your owne discretion, for that you cannot suffer that which the heauen doth ordaine, the faire Dutchesse was not for you, for that the commaunder of all beauty had chose her for himselfe.

Amongst worthy persons, there is nothing moze to be praised then to know how to beare and suffer the disgraces of fortune, with such courage as they doe her fauours: consider how little ease it should be to your grieve, in killing your selfe.

Dost thou call it little (saide the grieved knight) that alone is sufficient to succour me? Where with should I end so many deaths which waited on me, but in giuing my selfe one, for the conclusion of all: thys did euill agree vnto the seruice that thou owest mee, fith to die is onely profitable.

At this time answered the page, I will die ere you shed one droppe of blood. Heare me a little my beloued Lord, that I may set before your eyes example s for your comfort.

The Phrigians had exceeding cause to bewaile the death of valiant Hector, and they did fill the ayre with immeasurable lamentations; yet not one of them, no not his Andromache, though being deare to all, to him she was most deare, not one of them I say despairingly slewe himselfe, but armed their resolutions against their enemies.

Who could waile a louers losse, moze than Venus her
swete

The first Booke of the third Part

O divine Floriana thou art a creature ordained to excell the cunning worke of humane nature, but the dieties envying that earth should beare such perfect excellence, found meanes for to undoe so perfect a figure, carrying with it all the grace, beauty and perfection of the world, joyntly with the soule of this unhappy body. O ladies, that were envious at the bravery of mine, fortune had compassion of your griefe. Thou hadst reason divine Floriana to remaine doubtfull of seeing me at thy departure. How oft didst thou urge me with my plighte faith, the which I will keepe till such time as I am in thy estate, without any feare to lose thee, but to see thee with these eyes, wherewith I now doe celebrate thy death. O most happy land of Cantabria in times past, pittifull to my lamentations, how maiest thou from this day forwarde begin to mourne for the lacke of such a Lady and Distresse? Now my loving father, may you live content with my fortune, to see me live without my Floriana, who was so odious in your eyes, for that I loved her. I am vexed still that you doe not conceave it was life to me to love her, and a sweete ease to suffer for her. Nowe here I sweare by my high thoughts, not to returne to Spaine, but to destroy it once againe, if any therein were the occasion of the death of my loves life, although it were my naturall father. O my Floriana, what can I doe to live content, or who is able to giue it me but death onely: the which if I suffer for thy sake, I will receave it gladly. And having a desperate wil, he pulled out his sword saying. O happy sword, being the sword of my Goddess: with thee at her hands I received the order of knight hood: I sweare by her beauty that none shalbe able to disturbe me, til this unhappy body doth accompany her in death, that did giue it so excellent a life. At that instant he would have lifted up the skirt of his shirt of male, to have thrust his sword in thereat, If the discret Arfilo had not thrown himselfe before him, and pulled it out of his murdering hands.

Then

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

Then this grieved youth came to himselfe and saide: Oh my Arilo, is this the loue you beare me, to hinder me that I go not to accompany in death, that which neuer departed from me liuing: my friend permit it as thou wouldest the heauens to be moze fauourable to thee, then they haue bene vnto the sorrowfull Torismundo.

Worthy Prince and my Lord (answered the discrete page) I should offend much therein, in the duety that I owe vnto you and your generous father, and you offende moze your owne discretion, for that you cannot suffer that which the heauen doth ordaine, the faire Dutchesse was not for you, for that the commaunder of all beauty had chose her for himselfe.

Amongst worthy persons, there is nothing moze to be praised then to know how to beare and suffer the disgraces of fortune, with such courage as they doe her fauours: consider how little ease it should be to your grieve, in killing your selfe.

Dost thou call it little (said the grieved knight) that alone is sufficient to succour me? Where with should I end so many deaths which waited on me, but in giuing my selfe one, for the conclusion of all: thys did euill agree vnto the seruice that thou owest mee, fith to die is onely profitable.

At this time answered the page, I will die ere you shed one droppe of bloud. Heare me a little my beloued Worde, that I may set before your eyes example s for your comfort.

The Phrigians had exceeding cause to bewaile the death of valiant Hector, and they did fill the ayre with inmeasurable lamentations; yet not one of them, no not his Andromache, though being deare to all, to him she was most deare, not one of them I say despairingly slewe himselfe, but armed their resolutions against their enemies.

Who could waile a louers losse, moze than Venus her
sweete

The first Booke of the third Part

swéete Adonis; whom she found discoloured and dead, his faire body rent by a foule Boare: yet she despaired not amidst her lamentations. Sorrow for seperated friends I deny not is necessary: but to die because they die is diuillish and damnable.

Despaire depriueth al grace, doubteth of immortality: and let not your excellence wrong Floriana so much, to make question of her immortall being. Suppose her gone vnto a Princely habitation, hauing enioyned you to perfourme aduentures for her loue. Let your little short span of life, be the pzogresse to that house: your iourney done, you shall enioy her sight.

Therefore consider worthy Prince, and besides these reasons, remember the royall bloud from whence you descend, and the harme you should doe to many by your death, who haue need of that life that you so little esteeme. Celebrate the death of your Distresse, and let me be the first in death, if it may be any comfort vnto you? But I am sure that it is rather an anger to Floriana, who enioyeth a better estate than ours.

Therefore returne vnto your reasonable senses beloved Prince, and consider that it is the ordinance of heauen, for that you against the will of your father, would loue her, and might haue sought an other equall vnto your estate.

This griued youth receaued great comfort by the discrete reasons of his page, but not in such sort that it caused him to forget the griefe he felt. The page seeing that he was somewhat quieted and eased, drew forth a letter saying: This is the last worke that came from the hands of your Lady. This worthy Spaniard did take it and kissed it a thousand times, and bedewing it with teares, he opened it, and read as followeth.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The letter of Floriana the Dutches of Cantabria to
Torismundo Prince of Spaine.

Vnderstand from me welbeloued Prince, that I draw
nigh vnto a new estate, being appointed by the hea-
uens: and remembryng with what truth you answered
my firmenesse, almost life scarce suffering mee to write
these fewel lines, I toke strength to write vnto thee, only
for to desire thee by the faith which thou plightedst to bee
mine, to passe thy life in my absence with discretion, as is
required: and Torismundo, let not my death bee occasi-
on of thy indiscreet dealing. I would welbeloued Prince,
that I might in this worlde call thee my owne, but to thy
comfort in the other world I will: thither goeth thy be-
loued Floriana, hoping to see thee, when as the powers of
heauen will stande our friend. I can say no more, for that
my senses faile. To God I leaue my beloued Toris-
mundo.

Dying Floriana.

This afflicted Gallant concluded the reading of the
letter giuing a hartie sigh, saying. Oh chance, and is it pos-
sible, that now should be shewed vnto me so much euill,
and that she commaunds me to liue, and I must performe
it. Oh my deare Distresse how can I liue, who liued
onely with your presence? Oh Fortune with how much
discontent dost thou giue a little contentment. Oh vn-
happy heart so cruelly vsed in the beginning of thy age,
and tormented with thy excessiue torments. Ah Floriana
to remaine with life will be death vnto me: but seeing
that you receaue content therein, I will liue, employ-
ing the rest of my life, to loue in absence, in the same
degree as when I triumphed in your soueraigne beau-
tye.

Now you may worthy Spaniard (saide the Page) vn-
derstand

The first Booke of the third Part

derstande the discontent that Floriana shoulde receiue by your death, and the wrong you shall commit in not sustaining your life? And therewith the page caused him to eate of such foode as he bzought, although it was with an euill will. But yet the heauens did ordaine a remedie worthe to comfort this wofull Prince, for by reason of his great wearines he fell a sleepe a while, although it was not much, for that with a sadaine anger he arose by saying: Ah my Goddesse, and is it possible that there shall remaine no memorie of thy glorie and my torment, this commeth not of the loue I beare vnto thee? But I doe promise to solemnize thy feast, returning into Spaine, and giue the world to vnderstand with what affection Torismundo loued thee, and in saying this, hee went vnto a great and mightie Poppler tree, on whose barke he fired with his dagger these verses.

Ye Fawnes, and Satyres seruants to great Pan,
And olde Syluanus, all assemble yee,
Ye lightfoote Nymphes assist a wofull man,
Of wood or water whether ere ye be.

Wilde Forrest beasts shall helpe you in your song,
And roare a base to thunder out my wrong.
Not one must sing a meane in my lament,
Except the still streame gliding on the pebble;
Thus will we carroll out my discontent,
My wofull selfe will sing or cry the treble.

Or if ye will confusion marre our song:
For we are all confounded by deathes wrong.

On the other side of the Fountaine there was a rough and knottie ashe, whereas he desceyphzed the swete name of his sayze mistresse, and concluded with this Doe.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Floriana had not dyed,
Had not Fates her Loue enuyed:
Torismundo impartiall Fate,
With a deadly killing hate:
Sought to punish, but could finde
Nothing to torment his minde:
Till the fatall Sisters fell,
Worse than those three hags of hell,
Chancing to behold Cantabria,
And her Soueraigne Floriana:
Heard her praise the Prince of Spaine,
Heard her for his lacke complaine,
Heard her say she was his ioy,
Heard her sweare that no annoy
Could to Torismund betyde,
If she liude to be his Bride,
Where withall from her liues clue,
Hastely the thred they drue:
And with speed they cut the same,
When they heard my hatefull name.
So because I was enuyed,
Gentle Floriana dyed.

This worthy louer being somewhat quieted depared
and comming to the Chyristaline water, hee washed his
blubbred face and handes, and drunke of the vertuous
Fountaine: which so quicklie did worke his necessarie
effect, that befoze he departed from the water, hee knew
not what had passed with him, but the amorous life that
befoze seemed to be a Dreame: although he remembred all,
yet not in such sorte that the death of the faire Floriana
should giue him any perticuler grieve, but rather seemed
that he did wrong vnto Spaine, that so quickly left it, for
blind affection.

Being in this new & free estate, hee saw comming out

The first Booke of the third Part

of the thickest of the mountaine a Damsell mounted on a mighty blacke horse, with a Lyon before her: who at her arriual, with a gallant demeanour alighted, and comming to the Prince she said in the Spanish tongue: Alarous Torismundo, a wise man who desireth thy good, as to himselfe, commanded me to bring thee this armour and horse, and although their colours are now contrary, to the new and pleasant time, and free state which thy destiny hath brought thee; yet the troubles are so many that you must passe, in tormenting your couragious hart, that you may from this present, beare a demer consoformable vnto that grieffe, and in recompence he will desire no more, but that your heart faile not, but alwaies haue in memory, the noble blood from whence you descend, till such time as the same Lionesse nigh to the place whereas now you understood of the death of Floriana meete thee, then shalt thou know of the free life that shalbe admitted thee, and then thou shalt leaue this blacke armour, putting on with better reason this which thou now wearest, the which shall remaine vpon that poplar, till all be finished that I haue here rehearsed vnto thee, for so it is ordained.

This swift Damsell tarried for no answer, but with the speede of an Eagle she put her selfe into the Forrest: presently this young Mars, did put of his pretious & Greene armour, with the which he did encounter the mighty Alphebo, and hung it on the poplar whereas he found this saying.

He that takes thy armour hence,
which thou leauest for this blacke:
Shall againe in recompence,
giue thee ioy which thou wilt lacke.

With great ioy did this worthy Spaniard leaue his pretious armour, and armed himselfe in the blacke armour,
the

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

of truth, for that there were few like unto it. The armes
(as I say) were all blacke, but onely in the middell of the
shield was painted Hope and Fortune, Fortune saying
thus.

With the turning of my Wheele
all estates of men doo change:
Griefe or ioy (they vsde to feele)
on a sodaine seemeth strange.

Hee had not well concluded the perusing of the shield
with the device, when that some what a farre off he heard
a great troope of horse, and sometimes the noyse of Wo-
men, which seemed that they were by force constrainned:
which was the occasion that he leapt vpon his inchaunted
horse, and went into the high way, with all speed possible.
But by reason it was night, and the Moone went verie
low, he could not see nor know what people they were, til
such time as cleere Day appeared from the East: & then
from a little hill (whereon he ascended for to learne what
it should bee) hee discovered a mightie waggon, drawn
with sixe swift horse, being full of people, and to the num-
ber of 30. Knights with them, and two furious Giants:
by which he conceived that those in the waggon were ca-
ried prisoners. Where with he descended from that little
mountaine like an arrow out of a bow, and ran with hys
horse after them till it was in the afternone, and then hee
was constrained some what to rest his horse: in which time
the Giants got vantage of the way, for that the horses in
the waggon were verie good.

After he had a while refreshd his horse, this warlike
Youth went from thence more swift than the stone out of
the sling, till such time as (in traueilling) he saw a gentle
Knight with russet armour, and his shield of the same, and
in it the device of Cupide with two faces, different vnto
that hee was wont to beare, for that they were now both
closed.

The first Booke of the third Part

This was the free Dacian (if you do remember) in a
magnous conference with the French Ladie, on their jour-
ney towards Paris: the Prince (by the vertuous Foun-
taine) changed, had on his shield this Embleme writ-
ten by the wise Lyrgandeo.

Sith my libertie is gained,
Close those eyes my heart that pained.

The Prince received great contentment, when he saw
the shield with that posse, and willed the Pages that they
should follow him softly after, and spurring his enchanted
horse, he ran with more swiftness, than an arrow out of a
Scythian bow, enlarging his pace to know that well pro-
portioned and gallant armed warrior, till such time as
Apollo lacked little to leave the world as an orphan, by
want of his shining face: and then (in the midst of a
great plaine) he overtook the Chariot with many gal-
lant knights on horse-backe guarding it, among whom he
bealt in such sort, that he quickly gave them to understand
of what courage he was, to their speeie hurt, for that in
countering with the first, (who was a bold knight) he ran
him thorough with his lance, for his presuming to meete
him: and there with drew out his good sword, and so be-
haved his arme amongst that trecherous companie, that it
was great damage to euerie one of them that did with-
stand his furie.

So gallantly he behaved himselfe, that when the Ele-
ants and another gallant knight (big set and in rich ar-
mour) returned to see what the noise was which they did
heare behind the Chariot (for that they were then before)
this warlike Spaniard had slaine five knights, and did
such gallant deedes, that the furious Mars was not woo-
thy of his credit.

of the Mirroure of Knighthood.

It is not possible to expresse with what violence the Giants, the big knight, with other fire and twentie that remained (seeing what had passed) began to assaile and incompasse this yong Prince, in such sort, that it seemed by their furie they had bin able to haue broken in peeces a verie strong rocke they were so valiant: but this worthie & valorous Torismundo did sustaine himselfe in such sort, that (by the force of his arme) they receiued a bloodie payment.

At that time his new well tempered armour and horse did stand him in good stead, who was so light and nimble on the one side and on the other, as thought could bee no swifter, which was the occasion that the battell continued in a most honourable sort: yet notwithstanding it could not be but that he had need of succour in a fight so dangerous, for the warriors with whom he delt were verie valiant.

Such was his fortune, that then the free Dacian did set spurres to his horse, and came at that instant, when as he was executing such furie as the enraged Pirrhys did vpon the Phirgian people.

The Dacian greatly wondred at this inclosed knight, being verie much affected to his valiantnes, for that hee made no reckoning of the other knights, although they were strong and stout, but still assailed the Giants & that big knight, in such sort, that he made them feare his great and mightie blowes, hauing ouerthrolne twelue other knights.

Then could not Eleno stay, but pricked forward bys good horse, and with his happie lance in bys hand thrust himselfe among the knights, and ioyning nigh vnto the valiant Spaniard, he sayd: Vpon them good knight, for they are but a few, although they seeme to be braue and stout, for our iustice and their pride will giue them into our hands.

This saying was scarce ended, neither had y^e Spaniard
answe.

The first Booke of the third Part

answered it. When as with double courage he incountred one of the Giants on the one side in such sort, that he made him to accompanie those that were slain dead, being quite thrust thorough and thorough, wherewith he gaue a fearful shriek.

At which strange encounter, Torismundo greatly admired, and was verie glad of that gentle succour in time of so great necessitie. And so to giue his unknown friend knowledge of what valour hee was, hee threw his shield on his shoulder, and went against the great knight, (who troubled him most) and strooke him such a mightie blow vpon the helme, that he made him fall vpon his horse necke, voyding great quantitie of blood at his trayterous mouth.

At hand was the worthy Eleno, and beholding it hee meruailed at that blow: and seeing that great knight so nigh him, and in that sort, his horse also so astonished that he could not stir, he strooke him such an ouerthwart blow, that seizing on the inlacings of his helme, helme and head fell into the greene field, wherewith all that were in the chariot wondred.

This blow was not so sone giuen, but Torismundo (who the while was busie with the Giants knights, and had not noted what the Dacian had done) willing to conclude that which was begun, strooke the dead bodie which lay headlesse on the horse so furiously on the backe, so that passing thorough it, it passed to the horse neck, and cutting it asunder, all fell together to the earth: wherewith one of the Ladies that were in the chariot gaue a great shriek saying.

O glorious God, what great force is in this knight, that is not onely able at one blow to cut in sunder the Rider, but the horse also?

The valiant Spaniard turned his head towarde the Chariot, imagining that some knight would haue done iniurie vnto the Ladies, and in the chariot discovered one

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

of the fairest Ladies in the world, iudging her great beautie exceedingly to exceed that little, which he saw before in Floriana: whereupon he received a greater blowe at the heart, than that which hee had given on the bodie of the mightie Knight.

Here he that had swozne firmnesse to his Ladie, dooth now strive to dispence with bowes: he calleth the heaven bniust, in shewing him first but part of beautie, his valour wored weake, and his powers for a while failed, and faine he would haue spoken to her, that so thoroughly had subiected him, giving her in change of her first sight, bys loue-sicke wounded soule.

With this new desire and amezous passion, hee thrust himselfe amongst those few that remained, and saw the Giant in sharpe battell with the Dacian Knight: but hee accounting the affaires belonging to that Ladie, proper to himselfe, and conceiuing her to be the agreed and iniured Mistresse of the rest, he began a fresh to dispatch more of the Giants Knights, to carrie newes into hell of bys new change.

In this time was not the magnanimous Dacian idle, for that he was in battell with one of the most byauest Giants of all his Nation: but hauing a meruailous good horse, he entred in and out at his pleasure, till such time as he saw the stout Spanish Warriour how worthily hee behaved himselfe against the other Knights, where with a kinde of honourable enuie so pressed him, that like a furious Lion he encountered the Giant, who came towards him, striking one the other such heauie & furious blowes, that it caused the worthie Spaniard to stay his battell, for to looke on them: but he saw that the Giant had the worst, for that he faintly trauesed the field, stretching himselfe with the pangs of death: and being ashamed to see so few Knights so long to indure, in the time that the couragious Dacian Prince came vnto himselfe (for that he was somewhat astonished) he behaved himselfe in such sort, that hee

R

left

The first Booke of the third Part

left not one aliue, but onely two, which he receiued to mercie, for to be informed who they were, that attempted this outrage.

A good while befoze this battell was ended, came thether the Page of the Dacian with his French Damself, who receiued great contentment in beholding the valour of her knight, and reioyced that shee carried in her companie so good a warrant in the right of her Mistres Grisalinda.

The new and valiant Louer Torismundo being at libertie, came vnto the Chariot, whereas their Pages had freed all that were therein of their vngentle bands, and pulling off his helme (his face being by reason of the heat somewhat inflamed) hee showed himselfe to be one of the fairest knights that was to be found, and verie yong: for (as befoze it was said) his beard did not yet appeare. Comming to the Chariot, hee kneeled downe befoze the Ladie, saying.

Pardon (faire Ladie) my delay in græting you, for I could do no moze than was in my power, the offence arises not from want of good will: vouchsafe therefore to receiue this small seruice of him, that is readie to put his life in anie aduenture that redoundeth to your content, and to accept it as his owne.

The Ladie did well vnderstand the affection wherewith he spoke it, but (being restrained by the vnseperable yooke of marriage with the Prince of Geneua, who was present) she answered: The heauens reward you worthy knight, one of the most valiant you are that euer I haue scene: what you haue done for my husband and mee, heauen will requite. It is sufficient ioy to vs, that you haue shewed your selfe so valiant, that we may thankfully attribute the reward only to your worthines, as a thing admirable vnto vs.

It cannot be imagined what græf this passioned youth receiued, in seeing his remedie impossible, whereby hee
per

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

perfectly vnderstood the true sayings of the wise man, that he should see himself in excessive troubles, accounting this (at this present) to be one of the greatest aduersities, that might chance him: yet notwithstanding, because he would not giue them knowledge thereof, he dissembled his griefe and answered.

It were vnequall gloze vnto me gallant Lady, to attribute vnto my Arme, that which with so great reason is deueto this stout warriour, vnto whome with greater right you ought to giue the thankses for your ayde and succour, as vnto one of the mightiest knightes that euer bore armes.

And at this instant the Dacian Prince was with them, but with his helme on, because they should not know him. for that it seemed vnto him, he had before scene the Prince, spouse to the faire Dutches of Sauoy called Orosia, and greatly marvelled at the beauty and worthinesse of the Prince of Spaine.

So after there had passed many reasons with those Ladies, they did importune him much for to discover himselfe: which he refused to doe, for that he said he had giuen his word vnto the Damsell, not for to disarm himselfe, neither to enter into any publique enterbetw with any till such time as he had finished an aduventure whereon he then went. Without impeach of this promise Sir knight said the faire Dutches, I hope it will not bee out of your way to beare vs company vnto the citty of Paris.

When answered Don Heleno, I doe sweare vnto your beautie, worthy Ladie, that it is not in my power, for I haue put my libertie into the handes of this Damsell that commeth with me.

Wel, seeing it is so answered the Prince of Geneua, wee shall receiue great content if that at your coming to Paris wee may chaunce to see you, that in some parte wee may gratifie the greates good which you haue done for vs, which will be ioyfull vnto vs all.

The first Booke of the third Part

The like was promised by the worthy Torismundo, who was greatly affectioned to the gentle disposition of the Dacian, and would haue remained with him to haue knownen who he was.

Afterwards, inquiring of one of the Prisoners, who his Lord should bee? He said, that it was the furious Tilmon, Sonne vnto the mightie Brandafuriel, whome Clauerindo the Prince of France slew, and left this but a berrie yong Youth: but when hee grew great and bigge in yeares, he receaued the order of knight hood, and became the most hardiest knight in all that Countrey, liuing in such valiant sort, that he was esteemed for a more worthy man than his father. Which Tilmon (purposing to be reuenged for his Fathers death) came from the Towred Island, whereof he was Lord, and brought those Giants in his companie, the better at his ease to seeke reuengement. And after we had disembarked our selues on shoare, wee went through the Countrey in secret, till yesterdaie wee met with this Chariot, which was going towards Paris: and vnderstanding the græse that the king would receiue for the imprisonment of his Nephewes (as both the prince of Geneua and his Wife were) hee did apprehend them, to procure some occasion (through sorrow) to kill the French king.

I giue great thanks vnto God and vnto these worthy knights (said the faire Orosia) that your euill pretence took no effect. So for that it waxed late, they tooke their leaue of the knights, and iournied towards Paris, where they arriued the next day, and were receiued with great ioy and content by the king, vnto whom they declared what had happened vnto them by the way, and how they were set at libertie by two alone knightes: whereat the king greatly meruailed, and could not imagine who they shuld be of so great power and strength, that alone durst giue battell vnto so manie together, and against such deformed Giants.

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

He was somewhat comforted to see his welbeloued Reuewes: yet not in such sort, but that he felt in his soule the griefe concerning his daughter, which in conclusion he was constrained to make the Dukes partakers thereof: who although it were a griefe vnto them (as it was reason) yet they studied to dissemble it, and to comforte their Ankle in all that was possible, and determined that the Prince of Geneua should goe disguised and seeke those valiant Knights, and to giue them vnderstanding of all that passed, that they might frustrate that greate euill which was raysed against the Infant Grisalinda.

The which knightes, after they were departed from the Chariot, entred into the thicke growie Countrey, till they came vnto a fayre Fountaine, whereas they lighted: and the Spaniard cast his armes vpon the Prince, & said: Sir Knight, shewe not me so much iniurye as you did vnto that pzeious Lady, in not declaring to me your name: for in doing so, I shall remaine without gratifging of the ayde and succour you did vnto me.

Worthye Knight (answered the discreté Dacian) I
should be very ill aduised, if I should not acknowledge the
great good which is gotten, in making him partaker of my
thoughts, that is of such desert and so desirous: and if I do
use my strength, it was not for that you were in necessitie
therof, but the affection which I receiued did constrain me
to toyne with the breuitie of the time, that I might (if it
were not a grieue vnto you) demand what you were, and
likewise aduertise you of the most secret things of my hart.

Sir Knight (said Terismondo) I giue you great thanks
 for that you haue said : as for the rest , it is very apparant
 my necessity needed your strength, and to both we may at-
 tribute the ransome of those Ladies : for my name, I an-
 swer you as you do me : it is not iustice to denie a thing to
 him that hath so much desire to make me pertaker who
 hee is.

Know then that I am Torsmondo Prince of Spayne,
B 3 Whome

The first Booke of the third Part

Whome fortune (that neuer ceaseth to be mutable) hath brought as banished into this country, being tormented with amorous fyre: and there he declared vnto him all his life and amorous dealings: wherewith the Dacian was bound to declare vnto him of his loues, and the great troubles that he receiued.

At the which the Spaniard remained greatly contented, and they were marvellous affectioned the one vnto the other, and the friendship that was betwene them, did so farre extend, that it indured to the death, which was the alonely meane able to seperate their loue, and not the rigorous battels which they performed (as shall bee tolde you) were not sufficient, but that they were the greatest friendes in all the world, for that in one age, and in one Countrie, and at one selfe time: fortune had giuen them remedy of their grieve.

With this the Dacian told him the lamentable occasion wherefore he went to Paris: at the which the Spanish Prince reioyced at the heart, for that he should once again see the gallant Dutchesse: who was no lesse delighted with his great beantie, than hee was ravished and enamoured with hers.

They passed all that night one declaring to the other their former Loues, till such time as the Spaniard did tell him of the great affection he had to the Dutchesse: but the Dacian seeing that it was not good for him, (hee being a married Ladie) did cause him to leaue it off. Which was no small matter: for that a new passion (if once it be grappled to the heart) will sooner make an ende of one, than leaue him: but for that the remedie was at hand, it was easie to be forgotten. At which conceipt they did not a little laugh, both of them knowing the wonderfull effect of the fountaine.

The Damsell that vnderheard some of their amorous discourses, said vnto them,

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

Of truthe faire knights, it was no small greefe which the wise man did to discomfitt Ladies, which found so good a remedie against their strangenes. Of my selfe I say, that if I were beloued, I would not vse (as commonly it is seene now among Ladies) to dissemble so much, that it causeth wings to be added vnto knights thoughtes, to seeke out so vnſauerie a fountaine: for that it seemeth to me by the known vertue of this place, it will fall out that she shall remaine forsaken by her dissembling, and her gallant knight shal liue content to see her iust paine & greefe: a worthie reward for proud statelines. For if a Ladie loue, wherefore doth she dissemble? and if she hate, wherefore doth shee not make it knowne? But wee women are so strange of condition, that we thinke that it is sufficient to be women, that all the world may serue vs. This is a thing too vsuall, which ought not to bee accepted amongst discret people, although it may seeme that she onely is discret, who often doth vse this false dissimulation: Considering that hee who loueth, and is not dissembled with, doth not deserue the name of a Louer.

This hath place with them that are strange and giue not part of ioy to mitigate the griefe of the heart which loueth them, and I hold that knight careles, who may bee remedied if hee will vse it, and yet simply bearing wrong, reioyceth in his griefe, being content to bee dissembled with.

O faire Ladie answered the tender Spaniard, how sweete should a Louers life bee, if all were of your opinion: and how manie grēfes might they daily auoyd: for that Ladies doe dissemble the affection which they beare their Louers, and vniustly intreate them to whome they haue giuen their hearts.

Henceforth let all Ladies deale with me so, sayd the Dacian.

Peace Cynicke said the Spaniard, let me goe forward.

The first Booke of the third Part

It is good a Lady should be circumspect in yeilding her honour on any tearmes: and to esteeme it, when all the world both know that she is faire: but to vse it in such sort, to make her Louer suff. & grieve, she her selfe being passioned, and yet makes rigorous shewes. Faire Damsell, I take this to be one of the greatest tyrannies that may be vsed either to knights or against themselves, considering knights to gratefie their Ladies, euery moment put their liues at deathes doore: And should the Lady then be coye in his loue whome she loueth with all her heart: if so shee deale, who can condemne him truly that leaueth to know her: for her owne forwardnes is cause of her forgetfulnes.

You haue great reason on your side, answered the gracious Damsell, but these so costly hopes I like not of, that when they come, they are with pure hope loathed: for to my iudgement (and I beleue all those that try shall find) that the best of all hope in loue, is bought for more then it is worth. In these reasonings they passed away a great part of the night, till such time as the two new friends being wearie, they layed their heades vpon their helmets to take rest, so likewise did the Damsell and their Pages.

The Iusting which Don Heleno and Torismundo, had at their entring into Parris, and what more chaunced vnto them. Chap. 5.



Pollo had scarce shewed himselfe at his golden window, beholding the large Circle that he had to runne, when as the two valiant friends did arme themselves with their stronge and inchaunted armour, and mounted vppon better horses, then those which the amozous shepparde did shew, and began to trauell towards Paris, with great desire to be reuenged for the Infant Grifalinda.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

In this sort they trauelled, till after a little more then two miles they came vnto a great and faire brydge, for to passe the mightie Riuer of Some, nigh vnto the high walles which compassed the Citty. There they saw many knights staying for to haue passed, and some of them were in battaile.

These furious friendes picked for wardes, for to see the good Iusting that was there: And asking of one wherefore those Iustes were, it was tolde them that the valiant Alfino did make the Iustes, defending the beautie of a Lady, that a little before was come vnto the Court. This was the Dutches of Sauoy, and hee was the Pephew of the redoubted King Partomio, that accused the Princesse: who seeing that there lacked but one day, did think to carry her away with him, and the proude Alfino the Dutches.

The Dacian whose bountie was well knowne, did very earnestly require Torismundo that they would let him free the brydge. The Spaniard did it with a very euill will, for that it gaue him great grieve whan as it was told him Alfino was in loue with the Sauoyan Lady. The Pagan glozed that he had slaine verie many: and straight way they sawe when as hee had concluded to ouerthrow those which were there to prosecute their Jorney, they sent vnto Alfino a Page to know the condition of the defence, the which gaue the knights great cause of laughter, and the Dacian turning to the Spaniard said,

It seemeth that if we had not drunke of the water of the fountaine, we should not haue had contention about the iustifying of the beauty of your auncient Distresse. Although this were not, said the French Damsell vnto Don Heleno, I would commaund you in recompence of the sodaine passions which I had in beholding the passed battaile, that you should doe it in my name.

The Prince receiued great content in that which the Damsell said: and therewith shaking his Lance he entred

The first Booke of the third Part

But I am most certaine more than ordinarie sorrowe tooke seizure of her heart for the amorous Princes death. So much for her I dare affirme: for my selfe to be plaine with ye, I had rather neuer haue a louer than to dissent: ble his reward: for I delight not in their mourning sonnets, neither am I pleased that euery eye should bee fixed on his despairing face, and euery finger point at my disdainefull folly. If I perceiue hee deserue loue, I will crowne him with Loues garland: but if I finde him halting, he shall be sure to know that I can play the cripple. But faire knights, I am yet no Distresse of any amorous gallant, my thoughts are not captiued, onely I find my selfe to your worths so many waies bounde, as till I dye I will indeuor to deserue it with duetie. And indeeds she prooued as good as her word, as ye shal after heare in the loue of Torismund and Grisalinda.

In this sort at tenne of the clocke in the morning they came vnto the great Citty of Paris, at such time as all the place was full of people, abyding the comming forth of the mightie Partorio, for that according to the lawes of the realme, the Princesse not finding within the terme set, any to come and conquer the accuser, the King was to pronounce the sentence. All the windowes and galleries of the Pallace were hanged with black, and a heauie and sad rumour was heard amongst the people, at which time the two valiant Friends entred the place: whome the eyes of those that were present did much behold, wondring to see their armor and horse.

They were straight waies known by them that were at the bridge, and they began to say, there cometh the valiant warriour, that at one encounter, made the Louer, that kept the bridge see starres vpon the ground.

The Damsell went verie gallantly betwene them that were the flowers of Knighthood, with her face coloured, in such sort that it made the people to suspect her to be more fairer then she was,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Almost all the people in the place followed them, imagining wherefore they did come: and at the Pallace gate they alighted from their horses, with so gallant demeanour, that euerie one meruailed at them.

The worthy Spaniard did take the Damsell in his armes from her horse, and so with them she went vp into the great Hall, at such time as the King was going forth all in mourning apparell, so sad and heauie, that the princes to see him had great compassion. And for they would not delay the time, the mightie Dacian did somewhat lift vp his beauer, the better to expresse his words, saying verie curteously.

God keepe and deliuer thee from traitors, thou mighty King of great France. The same of a wrong that is done to thy onely Daughter, came vnto the Countrey where I dwell: and it seeming vnto mee a thing impossible, that the daughter of so royall a king should be carelesse in any thing that is agreeable to her honour and honestie, it dyd constraime mee to come, hauing better confidence in her right, than in my valour: but such as it is, I will imploy it in her defence. Affirming that she did not commit any such thing: and besides, that it is euill and dangerous, that so rigorous a law cannot bee referred into the kings hand: but to giue credit to whosoener (without any more consideration) that either for passion or for that a Ladies will is not answerable to their loathsome demaunds, will then forsooth (false knights as they are) bee so bold to vse their slanderous tongues euen against Princesses, and the royall chaste Daughters of holie and Imperiall Fathers.

But least these traytrous accusers should say, that cruelly with armes I come to defend that which is put to the tryall of battaile, cause him to come forth that doth accuse the princeesse, seeing time doth passe away, and I will with armes answer him.

And heere with he concluded his reasons, leauing all,

The first Booke of the third Part

but especially the King very wel satisfied with his words and gallant disposition.

In returne of answer the King said, Sir Knight I doe esteeme as it is reason, the trauaile which you haue taken for my cause, and the battaile which you will undertake for my daughter: and beleue mee gentle Knight, I doe liue deuoid of care, for that I know truth or falshood will haue successe answerable to their deserts: but for that hee who doth accuse her is a King, and a person that in all thinges is to be creditted, and on the other side my lawe hath admitted it to battaile, I hoped alwaies that some would be found which would combate for her, and in signe of the confidence I haue in her right and your valor, I refer all into your hand, being perswaded your desert to bee much more.

I doe kisse your Royall handes, answered the Dacian for the confidence you haue in me, but whether it be much or little all is at your seruice.

There was y^e Prince of Geneva and his Dutches, who came in with the Princesse, whan they understood there was a knight that tooke vpon him her battaile, he came and saluted the Prince of Spaine, knowing him by his blacke armor, and offered vnto him his lodging for the ayde and succour which he had done vnto them.

Vnto whome the gentle Torismundo surrendred thanks, but could not proceede any further, for that they saue comming the mightie king Partomio, and his Nephew the Count Alino, who for that they were lodged in the Pallace, came forth without armor: and when hee came where as the king was, hee sayd with a lowde voyce.

I do much reioice King of France, that you haue knights that will accept this battaile, and I come to giue them knowledge that whatsoener Partomio doth speake in pallace, he knoweth how to defend it in field.

The w^rathfull Dacian did put himselfe before him, saying

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

saying in this manner to his furious and proud aduersarie.

Truly valorous king, hauing such confidence in your strength, you had no need to raise anie slander against so excellent a Ladie.

Thou art herie bold answered the pagan, the cause of it is, in that thou seest me without armour: & to be plain, I put not on my armes, for that I iudged how that onelye in beholding me, thou wouldest gladly leaue off thy enterprise.

Thy pride is not small answered the Dacian, in hoping to doe that without armour, which is impossible for thee to perfourme, beeing armed and at thy best aduantage.

Thou maist well talke here said the pagan, vntill the hower of thy death approach. I wish of all my Gods that you were more, that I might giue ye your payments together.

The cholerick Spaniard could not indure anie longer, but as one wholly and iustly incensed with wrath, he thus said.

Those who haue little faith (as thou hast) doe invade knights with aduantage, and not they which doe gouerne themselves with reason: and because thou art vniust and reasonlesse, thou dost imagine my companion will suffer mee to helpe him. But thus much (on his part) I let thee vnderstand, that befoze thou partest with him, thou wilt rather wish for help, than desire to haue anie more aduersaries.

High vnto Partomio was the bold and stout Alfino, who with a deuillish furie would haue laide hand on his sword saying.

By high Iupiter I sweare to thee thou babling knight, if I did not assure my selfe that the king my Unkle is sufficient for thee and this cowardly knight, I would neuer put on armour.

Thou

The first Booke of the third Part

Thou maist well goe and put it on, thou vnmannery knight, vnworthie of a knights name (said the Spaniards) and hereupon I desie thee forthwith, that thou maist help thy Vnckle, in whom thou putttest too great trust: & with a gallant and soueraigne iecture, he presently shut down his visor.

Then the diuelish Alfinio tooke hold of the Princes skirt of mayle, and pulled so strongly that he drew the Prince after him, saying: It is honoz enough that Fortune hath permitted thee to desie and challenge him, that will not refuse to combat with Mars.

The Dacian was nigh vnto them, who seeing his discourtesie, would not remit his payment till the battell, but lifting vp his fist, he stroke him such a blow vpon the fore head, that he ouerthrew him at the Kings feete, saying: Uncourteous knight, befoze the King doost thou vse thy boldnes. Did not I forthwith stay for the battell, I wold giue thee the payment that thy folly doth deserue.

The wrathfull king when he saw his welbeloued Nephew lye along the ground, like a furie went against the Dacian with his sword in his hand.

The Spanish Prince was nothing dismayed at his diuelish rage: but with two light leapes he put himselfe, by his well affectioned and new friend, leauing all that were present greatly amazed at his dexteritie.

Then the King of France came betwene them: which was the cause that this furious Giant did not there end his life: and king Oristeo commaunded Partomio forthwith to bee armed, and his Nephew also, who was then come to himselfe, and seeing himselfe in that case, there was no Vircane Tigers furie to bee compared vnto his: but that forthwith reuengement should be made (as hee thought) he went with his vnckle.

Then the King commaunded the Princesse to come before them for to giue the knights thanks, and accept them for her Champions: wherewith the poore Ladie apparel-

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

led all in blacke appeared : yet was not she able with her sad lookes to couer and hide some part of her great beautie, which was such, that the couragious Spaniard had not power to resist the entrie thereof into the secret part of his heart : and it was of such effect, that he accused hymselfe, and said it was lost time that he spent without louing of his Grisalinda, whom he worships, and acknowledgeth her for his liues owner. This was such a wound, that neither water nor the wisdom of Merlin was sufficient to heale.

The gracious Princeesse in few words (yet excellently couched) gaue power to these knights to become her champions, against the false accusing king and his fierce Cousin. The Princes humbled themselves with such grace, somewhat inclining, so that easily might bee seene theyr gallant disposition and demeanour : but especially y^e Spaniard : who was the gallantest knight in the world. Long communication they would not abide, till such time as for the victorie they had done their best : therefore they descended into the court, whereas they viewed their armour, because no ouersight should appeare in them. When this was done, (without putting their foote in stirrop) they leaped on their well prepared horses, making them geue a thousand courtesies, with so gallant a grace, that all sayd they were knights of great worth : and the eyes of the people wer set vpon them with great content, but the encounter with so valiant Enemies, they that had best hope, somewhat doubted.

The worthy Spaniard did first enter into the Lykes, and seeing that their Contraries were not come, hee wth a lowd voyce sayd. What, doe they not come that wished we were moze ? it seemeth to mee that their wordes are not agreeable to their proud words, and I belceue they wil not doe what they speake : and if they durst, I hardly imagine their furie being so great, they would thus slack their presence.

The first Booke of the third Part

Thereby was a Knight, no lesse huge of bodie than Al-
fino, and something a kin to him, but at least his especiall
great friend, with whom he did communicate of his loues,
or (better to terme it) his foolish desires, who sayd: Pro-
ceed not so forward, thou ill advised Knight, for that shortly
thou shalt thinke this place too little for thee, when as
thy hands must be thy defence, and not thy tung. Well,
for that thou shalt vnderstand my little feare (answered
the valiant Spaniard) goe and take thy armour, for I do
giue thee license to help thy cousin the prince of pride, and
then thou shalt see who shall think the place too little: and
therewith he cast his gauntlet in token of defiance. But
all that were in the place thought it folly, knowing with
whom they should haue to doe, and yet so boldly giue them
a companion. The Dacian was nothing agrieved there-
at, for that he knew the new passion of his friend, and did
intend to helpe him to the death.

During the time that they staied for this so much doub-
ted Boze, this new Lower could not finde anie better ex-
ercise, than contemplation on his Goddesse, fixing the end
of his speare vpon the ground, and his eyes whereas his
heart was. The Dutches of Sauoy stood in a round tow-
er all couered with blacke, & with her the Princeesse, who
seemed no lesse faire, than heauie and sad. And while the
prince was beholding them, ther issued the deformed kins-
men, richly armed: the Kings armour was Lion colour,
with suns of gold, on his shield Reuenge with this posse.

Reuenge gainst one is insufficient,
One death cannot my rage content,

Hee was mounted on a furious horse, coloured dapple
gray, and all his trappings sutable: hee had vnder his ar-
mour a shirt of mayle, and was appointed in such sort, that
it caused a cold feare in all the beholders, to see with what
bzauerie the Pagan did put himselfe into his station.

There

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

There came after him that valiant and proud Alfinó,
all armed in yeolow armour, full of precious stones and
flower de lices amongst them. In the middest of hys
shield there was a Ladie painted, with this posie.

Did I but grace his valor, Mars should fall:
But he will win, despite of mee, and all.

The choler was so great that entred into our Spani-
ard when he saw that louing Posie, vnderstanding vnto
what ende it was witten, together with the wrong that
was done to the faire Grisalinda, without anie feare hee
went to him and said. Now is the time (vncurtous
knight) that shalbe scene whether I haue hands heere as
I had a tongue in the pallace to defend mee: and I will
make thee vnsway the falshood which thou intendedst in thys
deuice thou bearest. When hee was touched with that,
the amorous Moore could abide no more reasons, but tur-
ning his horse about, he put himselfe against his Enemie.

Now would I that I were inspired with some diuine
fauour, to declare the most furious Battell, that euer was
scene in the pallace of ancient Paris: the weaknes of my
Muse hath no power to expresse the worthines thereof. If
some excellent spirit now assisted me, with what content
should I prosecute the most heauie and amorous battel of
these furious Warriours? Who at the sounding of the
trumpets, parted with so great a noyse, as though the vn-
der earth had trembled, being eppressed with the furie of
their couragious horses, on whom they made their incoun-
ters in the middest of their course, with no lesse violence,
than if two rockes (remoued with the sea) had rushed to-
gether.

The speare of the mightie Partomio tooke no holde on
the Magicall shield, but it was giuen with so great force &

The first Booke of the third Part

strength, that it made the Dacian double with his bodie, and to lose one of his stirrups, and the reynes of his horse out of his hand, but not his memorie: which in that extremitie did much helpe him, so that at the staying of his horse he had recovered al, and returning with great swiftnes, he drew out his sword, and went against his Enemy: with whom he had encountred so strongly, (although hee could not seaze on him a full blow in the middelt of his shield, for that it was of magicall mixture) that he stroke him such a violent blow vpon the breast, which took away part of his breath by bending and bruising of his harnesse: and his speare (running forwards) shivered in peeces, a splinter wounding him in the throte in such sort, that if it had had a little more force, it had cut his throte asunder: yet notwithstanding he woundd him, whereof his flowing blood gaue testimonie, and made him to embrace the necke of his great horse.

The wonder was great that they all receiued, to see so furious a blow, and from that time forwards they did behold the Battell with more attention, perceiving by that beginning, the Moore (for all his brags) wold surely haue the worst.

The gentle Spaniard and his Enemy made their encounter in the middelt of the carriere, with so great force, that it seemed by the rumour of this course, some great edifice had falne. The encounter of our baptised knight was somewhat low, for that hee would not erre: yet for all this, his aduersaries shield and harnesse fayled him, & he gaue him a little wound, which troubled him: & they rushed together with their shields and helmes, and with their horses so furiously, that the Moore fell (out of all sense) with his horse dead betwene his legges vnto the ground. Likewise the Christian (being bruised with that encounter) was forced to doe the like, but his horse escaped, neuerthelesse he thought with the fall hee had broken his bodie in peeces.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Yet for all this he began to bustle and make himselfe ready to goe against his enemy with an admirable quicknes, saying: it stood him in hand, being before his Distresse, and in defence of so faire beautie. All that were in the place did verie much reioyce at the good successe of him with the blacke armor: but by and by he was troubled in that he sawe the third deffied knight come swiftly with his speare in his rest against the Lover. This wrathfull youth did not feare him, but before the Moore would passe, seeing the Prince make shewe as though he would abide him, he somewhat stayed his horse, because he would not misse, and comming nere him, he bare his speare lowe, intending to carrie him away at that thrust. But the Spaniard commending himselfe to God, at such time as he deliuered his Speare, put himselfe on the one side, laying holde thereon with so great quicknes and strength, that he forced him to let it loose, because els hee should haue fallen, and so the Moore passed for wards: carried with the furie of his horse.

This newe Lover, hauing gotten his Speare in his hand, and won it in such order, would shewe some of the antiquitie and bloud whereof he came. Therefore he didASSE and shake it before his faire Ladie, that behelde him fixing her eye on the place where hee was, and hee perceiuing that she did looke vpon him, as indeed all the people did, noting with what brauerie he did it: euen as if he had been vpon his good horse, he went after him that then was returned & comming to ouerrun him with his horse, which caused great laughter and noyse in the place, till such time as they were aduertised what was done. Then they saw that the Spaniard firmed his fete on the ground, and threw the Speare with so great strength that he strooke him in the midst of his shield, and made him fall ouer the crouper of his horse, whereas against the ground his head received a greate and greenous fall, and besides he caried a tronchon of the speare in his brest,

The first Booke of the third Part

whereout began to run much blood. Presently amongst the people there arose a great noise saying, Hee with the black armour doth begin to quaille the pride of the kinsmen. The furie of this famous Prince of Spaine did not heere rest, for when he saw him with the Lances overthowen, and that the other could not cleere himselfe from vnder his horse, he went vnto the last, and tooke him by the legges, drawing him vnto the place whereas the proude Alino lay blaspheming his Gods that had giuen such force to one Knight, at two blowes to bring them into that estate. And when he came to Alino hee said: Powe beaſt thou maiſt ſee that it is better to put more hands to the battaile than ſo much pride. I will not helpe thee from vnder thy horse, till ſuch time as this champion doth come to himſelfe, that ſhall beare thee companie in death: ſo he layde him by him, and left them in that ſorte, cauſing greate laughter among them all, and pleaſing the innocent Princeſſe, who then began to feele ſome new alterations, iudging with ſome paſſion, that which all men publique-ly ſpoke of the valiantnes of the Spaniard: who as though he had done nothing, threw himſelfe ouer the Pomell of his ſwoord, and ſo backt his horse that came vnto him, which was eſteemed of all for high noblenes. After he had a while beheld the place where his Goddeſſe was, a thouſand imaginations working vpon the newe forge of his thought, hee returned to ſee his companion: who at this time with his ſwoorde in his hand (very ioyous to ſee the gallantnes of the new louer) went againſt the redoubted Mooze, who vnſheathing his great fauchion and blaſpheming his Gods, they ſettled ſuch blowes on their enchanted helmets, that all the compaſſe did ſound thereof. They were ſome what amazed, but the Mooze had the worſt, by reaſon that the enchantment of the Dacians good ſwoord, was of more antiquitie & better than that of the Pagan, ſo that the magical temperature of his helmet doing him little good, his ſwoord muſt needs enter in therat more thā

two

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

two fingers, wher at Partornio was greatly amazed: but remitting to the force of his arme what lacked on the helme they began to strike in such sort that their armes seemed a new forge for Vulcan, approuing each of them with costly experience to shew his enemy his force & strength. In this the King seized on the heroycall Dacian such an vntoward blow, with so great force, that he made him decline his head to the horse neck, renewing the blow, he seconded another, that if it had hit right, it would not haue gone well with him: but it serued onely to inflame cholar in the Prince, & made him more quickly to come vnto him selfe: wherwith he assailed the Dooze, raising himselfe in his stirrups with his sword aloft, with so gallant demeanour, that it caused the stout heart of the Pagan to feare the blow, and to put his shield before for his defence, although it were but little helpe, for that the furie of the Dacian was so great, that hitting it he cut it in two peeces, and descending down by his brest to his shield hand: hand, shield and reines of his horse came all to the ground, and his horse with feare not feeling the bzidle, strided to goe forth of the impalements, if the same rider had not giuen him such a blow on the head that he cleue it in peeces, falling with him to the ground, hard by the Spaniard, who at the noise of the fall came to himselfe, being before in an extasie with beholding the faire Lady. They might well haue killed him, although with great lightnes hee went from his horse, and at the same instant the proud Alfino (with the help of his cousin) was cleere from vnder his horse, & seeing himselfe asote, he pulled out his mightie sword, and came against the Spanish Prince: who receiued them all three through the great courage he had, whilest the Prince his friend did alight from his horse, and although it were done in great hast, yet could he not come so quickly, but that the Spaniard had assailed the feared Partornio, for that he should not goe before he had first proued the sharp edge of his sword.

And

The first Booke of the third Part

And for that he had no shield he at his ease stroke him such a blowe vpon his arme that the force of his armes could not resist his sword, but it must needs cut his infidel flesh, and charged him so sore, that it made him put both hands and knees to the ground, and he said: Now thou shalt vnderstand furious Vagan what I said to thee: That thou shouldest see thy selfe in that extremit, ythat thou shouldest haue need of helpe.

At this time approached his couragious Friend, and almost enuious at that the new louer had done, intending to requite him with the like, he assailed Alsin that was on the one side, and lifting vp his sword with both his hands, hee stroke him such a side blowe vpon his helme, that he little enjoyed his standing, but hee ouerthrew him side-longs with a great fall, so that all that were in the place began to say: long liue so good friends that know how to reuenge the dishonour of our Princeesse. The King did verie well heare it, and although hee commanded them to holde their peace, it did little profit. Therefore turning to the Prince of Sauoy hee said: Of truth if these two be not the Greeke Princes I cannot imagine who they should be that haue so great force. Let not your highnes maruell (answered the Prince) for as I tolde you, I saue them against the Giants deale such blowes, that if I had not behelde it I could not haue beleued it, and I doe perswade me that the blacke knight is none of the Princes of Greeces, for that he is verie yong, and so I beleue is his companion.

When it came to the Kings imagination that it should be the Prince of Spaine: but that thought left him, for that he did see him ouercome at one blowe in the same place.

And turning to beholde the battaile, they saue the blacke knight come vpon the Vagans cousin, and strike him such a sound blow that he made him to stagger backward, three or foure reeling paces, and following the
same

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

same strooke him another on the hilt, in such sort that he gave him a deepe wounde, where with the skoute Alfino gaue the Spaniard such a blowe, that he made him fynde with one of his knees: but it was little for his good, for that with a light leape hee freed himselfe from betwene them, and seeing how the Dacian did deale with the Giant, he began to flourish with his sword and to part them from the place where they too made their battaile, and this expert youth (awayting his time) closed with the cousin of Alfino, and thrust him thorow to the backe, and overthrew him on the hard ground, saving himselfe with a light leape, so that Alfino could not reach him: if the Princesse reioyced at this, I need not perswade the reader, that hath had any experience of the sweete wound of love. This loving Ladie could not dissemble, but turning to the faire Orosia of Sauoy she said. It cometh vnto me gentle cousin, that your comming hether, hath begun all my good fortune by the force of that knight, which as I beleue doth all this in your service.

It is not to be doubted (answered the Lady) being satisfied of your beautie, that he doth this for you: hauing already done as much for mee to set me at libertie. Happie Dutches of Sauoy (answered the Princesse) that you obtained such a knight for your defence, and much more happy may the Princesse of Fraunce be, to obtaine such knights to defend her hono^r being indued with such excellencie.

And as they thus conferred, being young and kinswomen, their new change appeared, and it was no grieve vnto them to fauour the knight with the blacke armour, in in that they were bound vnto it: so looking into the combat place, by reason of a great noise that was amongst the people which said. From the Heauens descend the reward of such a knight that so doth hono^r the French court. They perceiued that the valiant Dacian at one irefull blowe, had overthromen the King vpon the earth and cut

The first Booke of the third Part

off his head, at that time that the cholozick Spaniard had done the like to Alino, and rouled them out of the place with great contentment vnto the King. Then the Spaniard went vnto the Dacian, who vpon his knees gaue him thanks, that with so great honour had holpen him. The gentle Spaniard did the like, and cast his armes vpon his necke, saying: Pardon me (my entyre friend) in that you haue seene my follies. Whereto the Dacian answered: Whatsoeuer error hath beene committed, it bringeth a pardon with it selfe: and whatsoeuer you haue done, hath been to mee great content, for that I perceiue your Ladie doth receiue the like pleasure. And from this time forth, let vs intreate of your matters with such wisdom, as is required in such a case as this is: and if it bee requisite to carrie her out of France, I profer my selfe in your seruice. Torisnundo did much esteeme this ayd promised, binding himselfe to more than to venter his life for him. And coming vnto the Damsell they said: For that she had done them so great friendship, and kept them so good companie, that whatsoeuer she would willingly should be done, shee should expresse it. The French Damsell being somewhat abashed, sayd. I am sorrie sir knights, that you doe reue in me that, whereunto I am so much bound: but the dutie that hath wanted in mee, my Mistres will performe in such measure as is reason. Faire Damsell (sayd the Spaniard) this alone is sufficient to leaue me in euerlasting bondage to you, if you procure your Ladie (finding my heart true) to be intreated to yeeld such pittie, as true loue requireth: and when ye would speake with vs, you may alwaies come vnto the Forrest, whereas wee dined to day. She said, she would doe so. At that they could not talke anie more, for that the King came in companie with all those mightie Princes and knights, that were wyth him. And when he approached, as these two friends were kneeling down to kisse his hands, he raised them, & embraced them, saying. I will not sir knights, that you suppose my

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

my comming is to rewarde that which you haue done: for
I cannot pay so great a debt: my onely desire is, that yee
would commaund my person and estate, in anie thing yee
please, and I will procure it, as if it were for Clauerindo
my deere Sonne. Wee doe well know couragious prince
(said the Spaniard) that whom God hath indued with so
much vertue, he will not leaue him without so much grace
but that all the world shal desire to serue him: our rewarde
is sufficient, in that ye haue admitted vs for your knights
in this cause, wherefore in all other things I and my com-
panion are at your commaundement. And now seeing
there is no more to be done, giue vs leaue (wee pray you)
to depart. You will not deale so vncourteously with me sir
knights (said the king) to take from vs the bond wherein
wee are so much bound, as to goe away, and not to take
your rest, and ease your selues in this our pallace. I doe
assure you worthy king (answered the Dacian) that wee
cannot tell you who we are, neither can we carrie with ye
without breach of our honour: and this we hope you will
not permit, only for the desire we haue to imploy our liues
in your seruice. For my part (said the king) you shal not
be importuned, onely my desire is, that you pull off your
helmes and speake vnto the princeesse, for it is shee who is
most bound for this deed. The Spaniard answered, (fain-
ing his voyce, for that he wold not be knownen). We may
as ill yeelde to this, as to the other, by the order of knight-
hood which we haue receiued, and verie much shall we be
blamed, if we make so long tariance, as to speake wyth
the princeesse: but hauing opportunitie, wee will returne
and serue you in all that you will command vs. The king
answered: With this I remaine content, although I shal
not forget the wrong, till such time as you performe that
which you haue last promised: and taking them by the
hands, he lead them thither whereas the princeesse was, &
her welbeloued Mother, who could not satisfie her selfe in
embracing her, as if shee had bene new risen from death.

The first Booke of the third Part

And when they came thether the King said, Daughter I cannot intreate these Knights to remain in our Court, that they might receiue the graces and thanks for that which they haue done for you. I would faine see if the request of Damselfs were of moze effect than that of Kings. It is not possible, welbeloued Father (answered the vnacquainted Lady) that they will lose the debt wherein they haue bound vs, in going away without telling vs who they are.

Most faire Princesse (answered the Dacian for that the Spaniard was not able to moue himselfe): The heauens doe know what grieve my selfe and my companion doe feele, in that we cannot receiue the curtesie of so high a Princesse, in remaining in this Court, but it would bee an occasion for vs to falsify our promise, if wee delay any longer time. Touching our names, we are of far Countreyes, and of so little fame, that if we should tell you, one ly it would be cause for vs to lose somewhat of that which we haue gotten. Touching your father and Court wee haue not deserved any thing, but occasion being offered, heere we giue you our faithes to returne and serue you. I wil be surety for this your promise, said the faire Dutches. I am content therewith, (answered he in the black armour) making strength of weaknes, and see wel that our faith receiues no wrong, although we goe secure that you will haue compassion thereon. So making their obeisance vnto the Ladies, they tooke their leaue and descended, much against the wil of the Spaniard. And mounting vpon their horse, they tooke their leaue of the Damself, who made her selfe to be known vnto the King and the Princesse, where of they receiued high and great content, & asked her who they were, but she tolde them what they had concluded, but neuer would say what they were: where as wee will leaue them in their suspitiō, for to speake of the three princes, whom we left in the way toward Greece.

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

Of the aduenture that happened vnto the Princes, Rosicleer, Meridian, and Oristides the Troyan, navigating by Sea. Chap. 6.



These three stout warriors were farre ingulged into the Sea, on the way towards the Grecian Empire, full of græses, the Troyan for his Country: the knight of Cupid for his faire Oliuia: and the mightie Prince of the Scythians, not alone for his faire Floralinda, but for his welbeloued childzen, not knowing when he should see them again: but some what comforted for that there remained in their companie and as their keeper their new friend Brandafidel, who made him promise that so soone as the strong inchauntment was finished, to returne and bring them to Greece: where, as the Princes will was hee should abide his coming. They sawe that their shipp made such great way, that it seemed it did flie, bearing most towardes the Orient, to the parts of the Desert of Arabia.

In this sort they navigated five daies, till the sixth, when as the golden heauen began to shew her faire face, they discovered not farre from them, a boate which sailed that course which they did: and by reason that their Ship sailed so swiftly, in a moment they overtook it, & in it discovered a mightie knight with white armour quartered with blew, full of many and costly stones, and a greene hat vpon his head of a strange work, with many feathers full of spangles of golde, which caused the lookers on to wonder: hee was to seeme but of few yeeres, but more browne than white of colour: he was with a Lute in his hand, as one that was intended to sing and play: but when he saw the Princes in their ship likewise armed and well proportioned, he reioyced much at their gallantnes, but

The first Booke of the third Part

could not imagine who they should bee, for that either of them had russet coverings vpon their armour, and couers likewise for the deuises on their shields. The Princes were verie ioyfull, when they saw that wel proportioned knight, who entred vnder hatches and came forth again with his helme on his head, and on his arme a shield of the same coloz of his armour verie gallant, in whose fild was portraied a Lady with a sword in her hand, & at her fete a knight with the same armour that he wore, who was kneeling on his knees with this posture.

My seruice shall approue,
That I deserue thy loue.

The Princes receiued great pleasure at the deuice of the stout Knight. The Trojan did request the other two Princes (for that al the Country was fild with their valors, that they would suffer him to answer whatsoeuer that Knight should demaund. The princes with very good will did grant it vnto him: and in ioyning their boate vnto his, there came forth from behinde, a weeping Lady, that caused great compassion: who seeing that the knights did cause them that gouerned their inchaunted boate to ioyne with them, & being nigh she said. Worthy knights, as you would fortune to giue you rest in your desires, tell me some newes of the Greeke Princes, or of some of their friends, for that I doe come in their demaund from a far countrie, because I was giuen to vnderstand, that they alone doo protect and defend those that cannot help themselves of which number I am one, and shee that sent mee to seeke them, another.

Comming from the mightie Citty of Lira in the kingdom of Lacedemonia, and going to Sea I met with this gentle Knight, who demaunded of me wherefore I came. And giuing him to vnderstand my necessitie, he made me answer, Well seeing that those whome I came to seeke were

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

were so mighty as al the world doth know, that although he went to receiue the order of Knighthood by the hands of the mightie King of Mauritania, who is the most famous Pagan that is now knowne, yet he ioyed to change his pretence, and caused me to enter into his boate, saying, that he likewise would seeke them, and demaund of them the order of Knighthood, that of their great valors somewhat might come vnto him. So it is answered this gentle youth, as the Damsell hath said, and it shall be greatly to our content to tell vs that we demaund.

The knightes greatly reioyced with the demaund of the knight, and the Trojan answered him, Of truth gallant knight, you could not haue met anye, that so perfect newes could giue you of these Princes as I, for it is not long since my companions and I did departe from one of them, although I beleue it will be difficult to finde them now, for that they goe in secret on a certaine aduventure. For the rest I beleue that there is none more friends to them the we three, for that their bounty is as an adamant to the will of him that will imitate them in their proceedings.

The knight with the white armour answered, Sir knight I giue you great thanks for the newes you giue me of them, and for that the finding of them is difficult it is sufficient for me to haue met some of their friends for to giue mee the order of Knighthood, and therefore I doe request you Sir knight, to giue it mee forthwith, although I haue not done you any seruice, for I haue somuch to doe, that the little time I am detained, will be the occasion of my eternall lamentation.

Therefore doe it forthwith, and I shall receiue great content therein, for that you are the first knight, that I haue met of the Christian sect, and he of whome I haue demaunded first this thing.

Then

The first Booke of the third Part

Then the Trojan said, I would gentle Knight as I am their friend, that one of these Princes of Greece were here for to make more certaine your honoꝝ, as to receiue the order of knight hood at their haudes: yet seeing it cannot be otherwise, but I must be hee that must receiue the curtesie to giue you that which you demand, with license of my companions (although it were better to be done by them) I doe giue you leaue for to shewe your power, in defending all such as are in necessitie of your person: And therewith he kissed him on the cheeke, and hee remained armed the best knight of all the Pagans, although without the feastes requisite for so high a Prince, yet for all this the Sea did celebrat the day, with bearing the name from that time for wards of Happy, which indured a great time untill it was stained with bloud, as shall be told you in the fourth part of this hystorie.

This furious Moore was ioyfull and content that hee was an armed knight, and rendering thanks to the gentle Trojan he said. Gentle Knight, Iupiter rewarde you the honoꝝ which you haue done me, in performing that which my soule so much desired: but although this executing great curtesie bindeth me to serue you al my life, yet I beseech you receiue no grieffe at that which I shall say, for so I am commanded, and I wel vnderstand that the cause is more difficulte, seeing by this charge I may assaile all the world. But it is better to performe my word though my hart dye: than not performing it, to liue without honoꝝ in perpetuall infamie and disgrace of my Lady, which I esteeme worse then rigorous death. So setting a part whatsoeuer perrill, and the dуетie I owe you, I say from this time forth I desire in mortall battaile, hee that will deny that the faire and soueraigne Princesse Flora of Argentaria both not excede all that liue and haue liued in fairenes and beautie, and this I will defend, against the princes of Greece so esteemed in the world.

The cholar was great that entred into the Knight of Cupid,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Cupid, and a thousand times he was about to answer him but that he remembred he should wrong the Trojan, unto whom was leaue giuen to answer all. But the Grecian needed not to meddle: for the Nephew of Priamus with great mildnesse, (that better shewed his valour) did answer: Of truth sir knight, you loue your Ladie verie much, and it seemeth to mee, that she ill rewardeth so great affection, to put you in a demaund so perillous: for the Greeke Princes and their Friends will defend the same, although they had no Ladies. And seeing it is her will, it were better that she did come with you, that in seeing her beautie, without anie strife may be graunted that which you doe publish of her. For I doe know two (and the chiefe Ladies of the Grecian Empire) that will not consent to anie such thing, neither wil their princes: in whose name (I say) that I am readie for the battell. This amorous Moze answered not, for that (with the swiftnesse of an Eagle imbrazing his shield) he leapt into the Barke of the Trojan: who at his entrie with his Sword in both his hands gaue him such a blowe, that by reason hee was but young to receiue such buffets, it made his teeth chatter, one against another, till such time, as he firmed himselfe well, and made him readie (without drawing his sword) for the battell: The Trojan was not a knight for to assault anie vpon aduantage: but seeing that hee drew not out his sword, he said. What sir knight, wil you conclude the battell without sword? if you had the weapon of the furious Achilles, it would be somewhat difficult, much more without it, and you also being without experience. Moze the knight answered the curteous Pagan, I doe wel receiue it to be as you say: but this is the meanes which I was commaunded to vse: so that there rests no more for you but that you attempt to doo your best, and I will defend my selfe.

The boldnes and courage of the Youth, caused admiration in the princes, that he would make battell without
D sword

The first Booke of the third Part

sword with the Trojan: who said vnto him. Sir knight, either let vs leaue off the battell, or seeke some what to defend thee, for that the Friends of the Grecian Princes doe not accustome to fight with anie, except it bee with great equalitie.

It is not in my power (answered the Moore) therefore thou needest not obserue with mee these respects. I knowe they are good: but for this battell, it is enough for me to go thorough with it, so as I may perfourme the commaundement of my Mistres.

The Trojan was kindled like fire, and said: Well, looke to thy selfe yong knight, since it must be done without swords.

O Muses, might I now wet my tongue in your sacred Fountain, then should I artificially declare the rigorosnes of this battell. For as though they had had swords in their hands, or their hands had bin swords, they began to strike in such sort, that quickly both the one and the other were assured of their aduersaries strength. But at the assault, for that the Moore was of bigger bodie than the Trojan, he might at his ease strike him vpon his magicall helmet, beating out so manie sparkles, as though it had been with his sword, and made him to decline on both his knees: but the Trojan rose vp verie furiously, and being nigh, he grapled with him, and in entring, he strooke him vpon the breast of the harnesse such a blow with hys fist, that by reason the place is there most perillous for his breath, it lacked but little that he had not stroken out hys life: and found time (by reason of his amazednes) to lay his strong hands on him with so great force, that if he had wrested a little more to the left side, he had ouerthrowne him. With this, the couragious Pagan came to himselfe, and returned more furious than the lion on his pray, and caught his Contrarie by the middle, so that he carried him three or foure paces, without putting his foote on the ground, leauing him bruised, and the Princes satisfied
of

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

of his strength. When they returned vnto their contenti-
ous battell, with so great a noyse, that it seemed to bee an
hundred knights. It was a thing worthe to note the dex-
teritie with discret retying and bold entring in of these
rare Warriours: strange it was, and more brused theyr
bodies, than if it had been with swords. At this time the
Poye stroke his Contrarie such a blow with his fist vpon
his arme nigh to his elbow with so great force, that he
had thought he had broken it: and the greefe was so great
that he could not returne his payment. The Pagan did
not let passe the occasion, seeing that it did behoue him, but
doubled another blow vpon his shoulder, as if a rocke had
falne vpon him.

They were wonderfully amazed to see the furie of the
pagan, saying within themselves: that he was one of the
most valiantest in all the world, and that if he shuld come
to haue the experience and vse of armes, he would proue
therein most excellent.

It was great reason they should so thinke, for of this
pagan Lyrgandeo speaketh manie things: making ma-
nie times mention of him in this great Hystorie, & of his
deedes that were diuers for the loue of his Flora. And see-
ing this battell was for her, and the first that hee fought
for the reward so much expected, it was without compari-
son to remember the courage wherewith he executed it:
which made the victorie to be doubtfull, and the Troyan
amazed to see how well his Contrarie defended himselfe,
and offended him.

Being therefore ashamed that one alone Pagan should
hold him so, he set vpon him, and stroke him so straunge a
blow vpon the forehead, that he made him to lose the sight
of his eyes, wherewith he clasped him in his armes: but
thereby the Troyan could get nothing, for that the Poye
was bigger of bodie, and yonger, so that what the one did
by dextertie and experience, the other did with youthfull
courage.

The first Booke of the third Part

In this manner they came sometimes aboue and sometimes vnder in the Boate, procuring on both parts to conclude the Battell : and it had been ended with both their deaths, if the Scythian Prince had not put himselfe betwene, and parted them to heare him speake, knowing with himselfe that his Friend should doe much better with his sword. He then said : Soorie I am sir Knights, that in this sort you giue the world to vnderstand your valour, and not as they that intend to ende their battell with an honozable conclusion : I speake not this to haue it quyte left, but request you that you would not now ende it, tyll such time as this knight may doe it with the sword. They being both as well indued with curtesie as with force and strength, at one instaunt parted, and the Trojan sayd : Most valiant knight, I am content to leaue it off with the condition you haue named, for to giue you content, if my competitor be so agreed. The worthie Pagan answered : I would be verie glad to doe that which you demaund, but the one is contrarie to the other, for if I doe not conclude this way, I cannot lay hand on my sword : so that it cannot be otherwise, and therefore pardon mee, who till now neuer denied anie thing that was requested of me. The prince answered : I will giue a remedie for the same, if it be offence to none, and take your hazard vpon my selfe. I am content said the Moore, because you shall perceiue that I will not refuse to giue you contentment : and howsoever it bee (beeing from hence) I will hold you for my friend, for that it seemeth to mee your worthines and curtesie doth deserue it. Let it be so answered Meridian, (being much pleased with the gentle answer of the Moore) and let vs goe thither where your Ladie is, although it hinder vs of our iourney, and there we will condition with her, how this battell shalbe concluded. This giueth me greater content said the Moore, for that the Goddesse of Beautie shall fully satisfie you with what great reason I doe defend her excellence. Well seeing it is so said the prince, I will

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

will embrace you for a friend, holding now in mine armes one of the best knights in the world. It is I that doth profit thereby (said the Pagan) to see mee in the conuersation of such companions.

There they all embraced the one the other, and Rosicler tooke off his helme, and discovered that deuine countenance, which was such, that the Pagan said: without all doubt, this knight is one of the Princes of Greece, or els Mars himselte, for such proportion and shewe of valour I know not who hath attained except it be those, whose fame in all the world is in equall degree both for fairenes and valor. In me Sir knight (the prince answered) is not that which you speake of, yet at least I haue good will (though I lacke force) to imploy it in your seruice: and I am verie glad that this battaile remaineth to bee yet decided, that we may reioyce our selues in your companie, all the time that we shall spend till we come thether. And I beleue in this our boate we shall goe more at our content, and to me and my companions a farther reioycing (setting all anger apart) if it will please you to serue your selfe of that we haue.

I giue you great thanks gentle knight (answered the Pagan) for the company you doe offer mee: for although there is not in me any good part to deserue it, yet there shall not lacke gratitude for to acknowledge it in such degree as it is reason. And therewith hee caused his Page and People for to passe all into their ship: but the Damself seeing that it would somewhat disturbe her going into Argentaria in time of so great necessitie, said that shee would depart and take her iorney towards Greece, for that if she should tarry so long, she should fall into rebuke. The which she would haue done, if the Trojan Oristides had not stayed her, and told her in secret that there was Rosicler the Prince of Greece (wherof she was verie glad, that she had so good successe) and aduised her to hold her peace and bee still till he told her more: so therewith shee was quieted

The first Booke of the third Part

and put a fardle which she brought with her into the boat, the which (with the swiftnes accustomed) began to navigate the right way to Argentaria.

In this sort went these foure stout warriors in the boat debating of diuers things: and finding fit opportunitie for the same, the Prince Meridian (in the name of the rest) did request the Pooze that hee would certifie them who hee was. The curteous Pooze answered, I cannot but in all giue ye content, seeing such knights doth demaund me.

You shall vnderstand, gentle and well disposed knights, that I am the Prince of Tharlis, the onely Heire of the kingdome after the death of my father, and being a child, I was tolde by wise men that in the beginning of my knighthood, I should passe many perrils for loue: and it seemeth to mee that it goeth forward accordingly, this being the first which this knight hath put me in. I being in the Court of my Father, the King of Argentaria passed by one part that lyeth vpon our Kingdome, and brought with him his daughter, of few yeres, but the fairest that euer nature framed, the which Lady I being a child, not knowing then what I did (but now I should kill my selfe if I performed it not) without any more consideration but with the content I receiued, I made her a mansion in my breast: where so long shee indured, that in good earnest shee hath wholly possessed my soule. Our Fathers were great friendes together at such time as they were aduenturous knights, which was the occasion that hee detained them in Tharlis a long time, but yet verie short for pooze Lisarte (so I am called). I am perswaded gentle knights, that she did not græue to see with what truth I did loue her, she would neuer make any shewe thereof vnto me. I might haue demaunded her of her Father, and an easie thing it had been to haue attained her for the release of my griefe, considering the great friendship that was betweene them, but I did it not, neither will I, for that therby I should offend the affection I haue to her, to procure loue by any other

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

ther meanes, than the right passions of a louer. To conclude, my fortune was such, that her Father carried her to his kingdome.

I will not declare vnto you what grieffe we two felt at our departure, it were but to fill you with amazmentes, but they shall well seeke it that haue knowen what bene- fit or losse cometh to be alienated, or accompanied with the beloued. I iudge as the one is a life, the other is a death, for the life I haue passed in her absence bringeth no content, so that I was clere without her sight: and I beleue it is an ordinary thing with Louers.

Now about a month past there came messengers from Argentaria to my Father, demanding succour, for that a furious and fierce Giant, being affectioned to the faire Flora, doth demaund her in mariage (and I doe beleue that the heauens hath created vs for one). To which she answered, that first she wold teare her self in peeces rather then marry to him. At which answer he was so angry, that at the instant hee iopned together moze then thirtie thousand men, and fierce giants, with whom he hath begun to spoile the Country.

My father for that he was bound, went in person with much people, and came thether in good time, in such sort that they kept the Giant busie.

Amongst other things there came a letter vnto me from the faire Princeesse, by which doth ease her absence when as it troubleth me. And for that I know you wil receiue content therby, I wil read it, & then you shall see the reason I haue to loue her: they al said that they should receiue great pleasure to heare it, and therwith he read it as followeth. The letter fro the Infant Flora of Argentaria, to the Prince

Lisarte of Tharsis.

Velbeloued Prince, if my absence hath caused in thee any firmnes towardes her that so long since professed her selfe to be thine, neuer can there be greater occasion to shew it, than now fortune, making me need help
when

The first Booke of the third Part

When I began to loue thee, did liue without care of any chaunge, thinking my selfe most free, and making a iest of my hearts strange imprisonment, assured in all good being thine. But proude fortune enuious of this my quietnes (which was the greatest felicitie I had) hath giuen me rigorous experience of her turning wheele, and so ordered, that the proud King of Cilicia hath besetoged my Citty with purpose to carry away the spoiles of my small beautie, that is due to you: and now seeing in what necessitie she remaineth, whome you called the owner of your heart, according to the promise you once gaue me, there is no need of perswasion I hope but that you will come: for now (being a woman) I put my confidence in your strength, as when I was a child I trusted in your promise. And although it be somewhat out of the way, receive the order of Knighthood by the hands of the King of Mauritania, for that according to the same as is heere reported, hee is the floure of Knighthood among the Pagans, and till you come to me let none girt on your sword. The Gods be your guide, and giue mee life to imploye it in your loue.

Flora the Princeesse of Argentaria.

You may well vnderstand worthy knights (said the louing Pagan) that I haue reason to loue her, who when I thought she did abhorre me, hath certified me of her affection with so louing a style, iudge it not pride in me to defend her worthines, which in all the world is a thing worthy to be known. And I do hope though I am in defiance wyth this knight, it is no let that hee should helpe to raise the siege of my Lady.

I warrant you (answered the worthy Greeke) although I defend the valor and beautie of Ladies, yet shall not my arme be the last in so iust an ayde. And I did hope no lesse of you (said the beloued Lizarte) but that your valor should be equal to the noblenes of your mind, and yet being wet

con

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

considered, it is not worthy much thanks, for that you do only what a knight is bound vnto: with this & such like they trauelled, and passed away the loathsome and wearie navigation, till the fourth day that the Barke arrived at a fresh and delightfull Countrie, which gaue great content vnto the Princes, for that they were wearied with the sea. Forthwith they disembarked their horses, and a palfry for the Damsell, who was very ioyfull to goe in companie with such knights. She went with her face couered, and the knightes with their visors open vppon their mightie horses, they being so gallant and the Sunne shining on their rich armour, it was a heauenly thing to behold them, and the sight thereof did dasell the eyes of the Beholders. They commanded them that had the gouernment of their barke to stay for them: so they began to trauell, receiuing great content to see the freshnes of the Countrie. The furious Pagan if any occasion should bee offered of assault for himselfe, broke downe halfe an oake, and laying it vpon his shoulder hee beganne to trauell with it, that it greatly delighted them to behold him: & as they rid, they passed away the time with him with swete and amorous conuersation, for that he was so good a seruant to Cupide, till such time as they came into a great plaine, where as they saw more then fortie knightes in a troope traouelling by the way, and in the midst amongst them, was some on horse-backe without armour, which gaue them great desire to knowe what they were. And when they came more nigher, they saw that they were two knightes, the one of middle age, the other somewhat enired in yeres, which had their hands bound behinde them, which caused in the Pagan great compassion, for that he was by nature vertuous, who with his oake came vnto one that went somewhat behinde, and said, Sir knight, if it be not much grieue vnto you, my companions and I shal receiue great content, that you would giue vs to vnderstand, what countrey this is, and what people they are that thus traouaille.

The first Booke of the third Part

The curteous demaund of the Tharlian did binde the knight, to answere, who said: sir Knight, this is the mighty kingdome of Argentaria, a fruitfull country. And those knights that are Prisoners, are Uncle and Cousin to the Princesse Flora, whom the fearefull Arlante Lord of the Cilicia doth demaund in marriage, and for that her father did deny it, he hath made war against him, & had it bene ended, but that the King of Tharsis came with a mightie power to ayde the King of this Country, and yesterday was the first battaille that was given, in the which was many of our people slaine, for that the Tharlians did shewe themselves what they were: yet for al this, foure Giants that hee brought with him, at the retiring of the people apprehended the Kings brother, Uncle unto the Princesse and his Sonne, for the which our Arlante reioyced much, but he would not put them to death, because he would not anger his Lady, knowing that in the end, they should doe by force, that which now they will not doe, being so much desired.

Oh infernall furies, I beleue the rage is little among you to be compared with that which entred into the affectioned youth: for that without any moze speaking, he lift up his fist, and stroke him such a blowe that hee made both braines and eyes to flye out of his head, and spurred his horse with so great speed as might be deuised. And ouertaking the in the middle of that plaine (the syth doth not so swiftly enter into the tender grasse) as this diuelish youth entred with his knottie oake, ouerthrowing both horse and knights, with such quicknes that it was a pleasure to behold him, whose beautie caused great affection in the princes. Then the noble trojan, the moze to satisfie the Moore of his worthynes, pressed forth his furious horse, and entred among them in such sort that they seemed wolues amongst sheep. In the meane time that these two were occupied for to dispatch this bloody war, their Pages did untie the hands of the prisoners, who were astonied to see the

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

the great force of those knights: who the one with his sword and the other with his oake, so handled these miserable people, till only two remained, who thinking to find more helpe in their horse than in their force, began to flye with as much speede as they could: but the wrath of the Tharsian was such in that extremitie, that he followed after them without admitting any mercy (the which he otherwise much esteemed): but for that it was in business which touched his beloved Flora, and that she had receiued griefe, for the lacke of her Uncle and Cousin, he gaue them their payment as the rest, and returned with a quiet pace vnto his Companions, who abode his comming with the prisoners, & they receiued him with great content, and were glad they were come in the Countrey, whether as they were bound. The prisoners did yeld them great thankses for the succour they gaue them. When the Trojan asked how farre it was to the Campe: The prisoners sayde that it was litle more than a mile: then they entred in among the trees, and lighted, but pulled not off their helmes, vnsaying no more speech but that they were wandring knights who hearing of the vnreasonableness of the Cilician, came to helpe the Lord of the Countrey.

The knight that was prisoner did much esteeme it, and gaue them great thankses in the name of his brother the King.

Where they consoled that forthwith, through the thickest of that mountaine, the two knights with all their pages and the Damsell should enter into the Cittie, for that they sould first see the scituation of their enemies Campe. The Father and the Sonne would verie gladly haue borne them companye (for they were both good knightes) but they would not consent thereunto.

So they began to goe for wards being armed with other armour of the Dories, not without griefe of the Damsell, but she seeing that Argolio, Page to the Greeke Prince went with her, she was comforted.

The first Booke of the third Part

Being departed from them, the three frendes a newe
prayed much the Pagan, and hee answered them with
great discretion, wherewith he was indued moze then all
other Pagans. They pulled off their helmes for to ease
themselues till it was night, for that then they would set
vpon the campe, for that they had informed themselues of
the way, and had agreed with them that went vnto the ci-
tie of Napea, whereat was incamped al the enemies, that
at the beginning of the night, the gate which opened vnto
the campe should be left vnlockt, for that they would bend
their course thether: so taking their watch word, because
they would not bee dispersed, which was, Troye, they
mounted on their horse and rid towards the Cittie, at that
time when as the Sunne had altogether hid his face vn-
der the deepest caues of the earth, and came at such time
as they were all at rest, and were sure that fewe would
trouble them, because they were al wearied with the bat-
tell.

The two first watches of the night was past, when as
these foure most strong warriors, did enter into y^e carelesse
campe of their enemies, and agreed to goe vnto the tent
of the braue Cilician King. And concluded amongst them
that the Grecian should remaine at the entry dooze, and
the other three should enter in.

With this agreement they went vnto the great tent (and
for that the Moone did show her selfe moze fairer then she
did to her beloued Endimion) they might goe straight the-
ther without speaking to any, for that the watch thought
they were of the Royall guard.

At one instant they all alighted, and left their horses
at the dooze in the keeping of the Greeke Prince: they en-
tered in the companie of other Cilicians, and came when
there safe in counsell with the King, the foure mighty Gi-
ants armed with rich and shining armour: and at that
time they concluded the next day to giue assault vnto the
Cittie.

But

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

But braue Knights said the pagan King, be aduertised that if it may be possible, kill not anie, wherby discontent shuld redound to my beloued Flora, whom I would not offend in anie thing.

It is impossible to note the anger that this amozous Charlián receiued, to heare that deformed Giant talke of Flora, as a Ladie proper vnto himselſe : and not hauing power longer to hide his intent, he tossed about wyth his knottie staffe, and with a lowd voyce sayd : Carrie a while (false King) befoze thou dost enioy her excellence, thou shalt ſeele the weight of my oake. Then without conſidering in what danger he put himselſe, he ſtroke him ſo ſtrong a blow vpon the helme, that he made him (againſt his will) to leaue the ſeate where he ſate : his two Companions were not ſlothfull, with the ſecuritie they had of the keeper they left at the doze, but with their cutting ſwords laid on thoſe knights in ſuch ſort, that befoze they could turne them, they had left but ſome few, and thoſe verie ſoze hurt, being the moſt principall in all the camp : but by reaſon that the Giants were verie ſtrong and well armed, they ioyned with them a well fought and intangled battell.

The valorous Louer of Oliuia, was not idle, for that at the doze (like a good and faithfull Porter) he let none enter, but that he left his life in recompence : till ſuch tyme that at the noyſe there came vppon them ſo much people, that the Troyan was conſtrained to glue out the ſigne, & to goe forth at the doze, whereas with the Giaunts they were in great trouble for mounting their hozſes: but with the helpe of the Greeke they at laſt got vp. Liſarte carried in triumph a heauie Pace of the kings, which when he fell from his ſeate hee tooke from him : with the which it was a maruellous thing to behold the hard and lamentable blowes that he ſtroke vpon thoſe euill armed people. In this ſort went theſe ſoure Friends thorough the camp, ouerthrowing hozſe and knights, and amongſt them the

The first Booke of the third Part

well corded tents : so that it seemed a great Armie had bin toynd together, the rushing of these sours was so great. In this sort they crossed the Campe, leauing dead and euill wounded, moze than thzee hundred men, besides the principalls of the Councell of warre. Whose were they, which the pagan King graued most to lose. And when he came vnto himselfe (as a man out of his wits) hee began to make a noyse, reuiling and forsaking his false Gods, and entring into the roome whereas they were, hee sayd: Now you euill Gods, may you seeke those knights that fauour you, in whom you haue put so much power, and began with a club to beate his poore Gods, paying them that which he deserued. At last hee vowed that hee would not vnarme himselfe, nor suffer any to enter to see him, till he had been reuenged on those rebellious knights, that so much at their ease wer departed. Who leauing the whole Campe afraid, they came vnto the brydge of the Little, whereas they found to the number of ten thousand men, readie to come forth, if need had so required, and for Captaine of them a worthy Tharsian, somewhat a kin to the fierce Lisarte, who was so angrie, that hee would haue returned with those people vppon the Campe. Which had been no smal aduantage: but yet his friends did stay him, saying: that the next day he should not lacke occasion for the same. With this the cholericke Youth was pacified and entertained the Captaine of the people verie courteously, and he them likewise, & guided them vnto the palace, whereas the Kings did tarrie for them, and the gallant Flora. The heroycal Tharsian was imagining what to doo, & doubted he had done litle in her seruice that night in that he had left him alive, that iudged himselfe worthy to deserue her: yet for al this he encouraged himselfe, and purposed not to be knowne, till hee had ouercome that furious Giant, and presented his head to his Ladie. The King receiued them with great thanks, for that in al respects he was a good knight, and frendly to honoꝝ such as came

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

came vnto him, and verie thankfully gratulated the success they offered & had made to him and vnto his daughter: yet would not they suffer themselves to be knowen, although the Princesse did desire them verie much. There was appointed for them a lodging where they should take their rest: where they were served with manie dainties, which the Princesse sent them, who imagined that her Prince was amongst them.

These foure Companions supped with great contentment, and for to please the Prince, all the supper time they talked of Flora, declaring the reason he had to loue her, for that she was so faire. And they were not deceiued, for she was one of the comeliest in the vniuersall world, and for her sake the Tharsian put himselfe in great daungers as shalbe told you.

When they had done, they went to rest, but sent that night order vnto the Kings, that early in the morning all his people should be armed. By and by it was noysed abroad in the Citie, what aid and succour there was come, for the which all the night great fier lights were made for ioy, and accompted the warres to be ended, hauing those foure knights.

The ende of the Battell betweene the Tharsian and his Companions against their aduersaries.

Chap. VII.



The Louer of Daphne had begun to renue his light ouer the world with his hote presence, when as those foure friends mounted and armed went vnto the pallace, leading after them all the people of the Citie voluntarily, who seeing them so gracious, said.

The

The first Booke of the third Part

The Gods haue well ordained, that for foure Diuels haue sent vs foure Angels to deliuer vs from their hands. When they came vnto the Pallace, wheras the kings and the princeesse were tarrying for them, verie ioyfull to see their gallant demeanour. Whereas forthwith (because they would lose no time, they agreed, that the Grecian & Prince of Tharsus, should goe forth into the Campe, and that the rest should be alwise off, to yeld their helpe when need required.

They all reioyced at the agreement: wherewith the common people began to place themselves vpon the wals of the Cittie, the better for to see what these knightes did, & he like did the princeesse & her damosells, from that part of the pallace that looked towards the Campe: there they tarried the coming of the two friends, her heart working with exceeding ioy and desire to behold the battell, as one that had no small interest in the action.

These two passed through the streets so pleasantly, that which way soeuer they went, the Ladies gaue them a thousand blessings, and the people with high voices gaue testimonie of that they desired. The Tharsian was mounted on his nightie horse, and at the pommel of his saddle did hang that bloodie Pate that he won the night before, with a speare that seemed to be a beame of an oak tree, & a gallant horne at his necke that became him well. They all meruailed at the furious countenance they both shewed: for although the Grecian was not so great, beeing about three fingers lesse than the prince of Tharsus, yet he was altogether as well set, and rid in such sort, that all did esteeme him for a stout knight, when they saw his gallant disposition.

Forthwith they went forth into the Campe, & when they had passed the bridge a bow shot, the Tharsian lift vp his visor, and began to blow his horne with so great force, that he made it to be heard throughout all the Camp, and said.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

A furious and fierce Pagan, is it possible that hee who would haue the faire Flora for wife should be so carelesse, his enemy being in the field: Come, if thou wilt haue the weapon that thou didst loose yesternight, and bee reuenged: for here I doe carry for thee. The Princesse did verie well from the place whereas shee was, heare what the knight said, being very ioyous that so good help was come vnto her.

The Tharsian seeing that he came not, blew his horn againe and said. O vile Dooze, wherefore dost thou stay and not come forth into the field, thy Lady being there? Come, come for it is now time for to make thew that thou dost loue, and the effect of all thy force.

The Pagan tarried not long, but put himselfe at the doore of his Tent, mounted on a proud and mightie horse, armed in blacke armour, full of red knots, which caused feare to them that did behold them. There were two Giants that would not agree that he should goe forth, and for that they were armed, and mounted vpon great beastes, they sayd to him: stay mighty Arlante, for wee will goe and bring vnto thee those vncurteous knights, disturbers of our quietnes, for it is no right to giue them so honozable a death as to die by your hands.

So pulling downe their visors they went without company from the brydge, whereas they caused more to bee in a readines, when it was needful. It did not greeue these two friends to see them come in that sorte, being so big that they seemed great Pine trees.

At their comming the biggest of them who was called Fermonte said: what is it that you would haue knights, that so early haue risen for to disquiet the King Arlante our Lord? if you come to seeke your death for the offence which you committed yesternight, hee doth not come to giue it you, for that he will not giue you so much hono^r.

The Tharsian tooke in hand to answer him, and said,
D thou

The first Booke of the third Part

thou vncurteous beast, if the tyzant haue anie anger against vs, and so much delighteth to make warre wyth them that neuer did him wrong, it were better for him to take reuenge himselfe, or else peradventure he meaneth to take vengeance of his wyath and your deaths together. So without anie more words they turned their horses, & made their incounter in the middest of their carrere with such a noyse, that it seemed foure furious rockes had met together, their incounters were such.

The valiant Charistian seeing that it was the first lance that he ran with in all his life, and being also before bys faire Mistres, hee commended himselfe to Mahomet for helpe, and incountred the fierce Giant with such a blow, that with a truncheon of the launce in his breast, he made him fall to the ground, so that hee moued neither hand or foote, with so great wonder vnto them that were present, that they forgot the wondrous blowe that was giuen by the warlike Grecian: who (as though the faire Oliuia had been present) encountred the Giant so strongly, that hee made him to fall ouer the horse crupper, pearced thorough and thorough: and he was incountred in such sort, that it made him stagger in the saddle, and the Charistian failed his stirrops with his streng incounter: but in recovering himselfe, hee stayed to behold with what gallantnes the Grecian returned, more esteeming him then than he did before.

From the Cittie there was heard a great noyse of mirth, the people saying, We haue one diuell lesse.

The two good Friends of these stout Warriours came forth of the Citie, for that they saw the other two Giants did make themselves readie for to incounter them, & that out of the Court of Guard came forth the fierce Arlante, mounted on a mightie Elephant, and at his saddle bolwe another mightie mace of Steele hanging, whereby it did appeare, he was verie cunning in vsing of that kinde of weapon.

The

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The two Giants seeing their companions on y^e ground at one blow, without keeping the law of Knighthood, came with their speares to incounter the two good Friends, who did abide them without anie feare, the one with his new sword, and the other with his mace. When they came to make their incounter, it was a sight wort^hie to be seene: for even as thogh they should strike vpon a rocke, in such sort the Giants moued the knights, passing the one by the other without anie staggering. Forthwith they returned with their mightie fawchions in their hands: and all of them at one time smit such blowes, that it was meruaile they fell not all to the ground.

Somwhat more did the Princes shew themselves, for that the Charli^an (with his heauie mace) reached on the helme of his Enemie such a blow, that hee made him decline his head to the saddle bow, and comming with another, if he had hit him full on the head, he had ouerthrowⁿ him: yet (for all that) he gaue him such a blow vpon the shoulder, that (with verie græse) he could no more moue his shield arme. But the Giaunt (roaring like a Bull) strooke such a blow, that (lighting vpon the Charli^an's helme) it made him fall vpon his horse necke without anie sense, and it seemed that he was dead, for that his horse carried him about the field, till hee came vnto the place whereas the first fierce Giant lay astonied wyth hys incounter.

The Giant being now come to himselfe, arose vp, and seeing his mortall Enemie in that sort, hee assayed for to take him in his armes: and he had done it, if at that time the Louer of Floralinda had not come, who seeing the vncurtious dealing of the Giaunts, (hauing a good horse) came at such time as this wretch was laying hold of the Prince, and gaue him such a thrust with the breast of his horse, that the vnwieldie Monster fell downe vpon the ground.

The first Booke of the third Part

Now was the couragious Youth come vnto himselfe, and acknowledging his estate, he humbled himselfe to the Prince for his ayd and succour, and therewith hee lift vp his mace, and went to the other Giant, who came and receiued him with his fauchion aloft: but this beloued youth did execute his blow in such sort, that he made his bzaines flye out of the scull, and ouerthrew the Giant to y^e ground. And when he saw that the Scythian prince would alight from his horse, he came to him and said: Worthy knight, let this reuengement be mine, for that it toucheth me, and I will procure to execute it, and therewith he leapt as swift as an Eagle vpon her pray: which caused all that were in the Cittie to maruell, and likewise his Ladie, who remembered her Lisarte, and prayed God that he were one of those knights.

The Greeke prince vsed his aduersarie in such sort, that he could not rule his sword: which being perceiued of the prince, he closed with him, and caught hold on his hearme with so great quicknes and strength, that he pulled it off, and strooke him withall such a blow, that hee ouerthrew him at his horse fete. By which time, the Tharsian had cut off the head of his Enemy, with great content vnto them al, and praised the Horse when they saw him mount on his horse without putting his foot into the stirrop. With manie requests he toke the speare of the Trojan, who let him haue it being greatly affected to the valiantnes of the Youth.

At this time came forth the stout Arlante, saying: Come to me all yee weake knights, for of you all I purpose to take reuengement.

The worthy prince of Tharsus put himselfe first forwards, and said: Stay proud king, thou shalt perceaue that thou dealest not with knights which doe vse to combat with anie such aduantage: for euerie one of himselfe is sufficient (by the helpe of the immortall Gods) to make a more mishapen wight than thou sweat drops of bloud.

And

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

And all this might haue been excused, if thou hadst don like a knight to haue come forth, when I defied thee, but thou wouldst needs send thee Giants, to make them pay that which thou owest: and seeing that thou art so angry with that knight that stroke thee yesternight and tooke away thy weapon, looke vpon him for I am he, and if thou wilt assure me from thy other knights, I will make equal battaile with thee, with condition, that if I overcome thee, thou shalt forthwith raise thy siege, and if thou overcome me vnto thou thy will on mee, and my companions shall returne to the Citty, and thou shalt haue time to doe that which thou dost intend. Well said Arlante, I would that Mars himselfe would come to help thee, and yet for all that I shoulde not thinke my selfe reuenged: and turning about his horse he would haue assailed him. But the gentle Lisarte sayd, stay king, for first I will giue them to vnderstand, to whome my heart is bound of this battaile that I summond, for if I had the libertie as thou hast, I would make an end of it forthwith, but thou must giue mee sureties for thy word, and sweare before some that thou wilt accomplish it, and I will doe the like.

Thou makest many excuses said thee Pagan, and I beleue thou dost it because thou wilt not performe it.

The gallant Louer was much vexed thereat, and therefore requested the Tropan to goe and make the Kings acquainted of this agreement: but they would not consent thereunto, for that it seemed they were some what wearied of their daies worke, whereat the two knights receiued græfe.

But seeing it could not be otherwise, the Giant returned to his Campe blaspheming his Gods: and our knight with his companions, went into the Citty, whereas the Kings came forth to meete and receiue them, whereas passed betwene them many matters important, which for

The first Booke of the third Part

to annoyde tediousnes I doe let passe, neither what the true Louer felt when hee was besoze his Flora, who receiued them with so great ioy and content: but yet they would not pull off their helmes till the battell was ended. So they went to take their rest, tarrying till the morning, al praying vnto God to giue them victorie against so great an enemy.

When as the gallant Tytan had left the morning comforted, and went to Thetis with new shewes of fairenes, these foure warlike youtnes, being armed with their shining armour, went forth into the Market place of their Cittie, whereas the Kinges and knightes did abide their comming, and did beare them company vnto the bidge, leaving the Princesse with a thousand suspicions in her louing imagination, whether hee that put himselfe in so great perill and danger, were the knight whome she had printed in her heart, or not: yet for to giue them content and shew forth her gallantnes, she apparelled her selfe al in blew, wrought vpon Salamander skins, then being many bright shining Carbunkelles, embroyzed thereon with diuers Laces of her owne hayze (which wee may equall with the threds of gold which the Pimphees of Arcadia did spinne) she made a sightly garland, with so strange kinde of working, that I knowe not what Artift could equall it. Shee greatly contented her Louer in sending him a Beuer of blew, like vnto her garment, by her damsel, who said vnto him with great curtesie, Sir knight my Mistresse the Princesse Flora commends her vnto you, and for that you doe goe to make battaile for her, desires that you would be wchsafe to carrie this fauour, for shee cannot as she would helpe you with more than with this.

The loued Tharsian answered, faire Damsell say vnto your Mistresse the princeesse, y he which so long time past doth liue bound to her perpetuall seruice, hath little neede of such curtisie, but being encouraged by her gift to present her the head of the King of Cilicia in recompence for the Beuer,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Beuer, or in the demaund to lose myne owne life, and being for such a Lady I account my death happie. And therewith she returned to the Princesse, who considered much of the answer of the Knight, concluding to confirme in her amorous suspicion, that it should be her beloued prince Lisarte.

And there with shee went vnto the windowe with her Damselfs to see the battaile, with more fearefull care then euer shee had til that time, cursing a thousand times that Giant, that had done them so great wrong, till such time as she did see comming her welbeloued Louer, who was the ioyfullest man in all the world, for the fauour which the Princesse had sent him. And when hee passed by the window, he did obeysance and made his great horse to bow his knees with such a grace, that made all the Ladies much affected to him, to see his gallant demeanure. At his entring into the field, hee put for iudge on his part, the Kings brother and his Sonne, vnto whome he had giuen libertie, and caused all the armye to be in a readinesse if need required.

The gallant Charliian put his horne to his mouth, making it to sound throughtout all the Campe, to aduise the King of his comming, who came armed with his accustomed armour, sauing that on his shield there was a Serpent carrying in his clawes a Lady which he tooke from a fierce crowned Lyon that had her, with this Poëse.

Stronger from strong doth take,
The pray he nill forsake.

This valiant youth did well vnderstand to what ende he had that deuise, and for that the possession of her should be gotten by strength of arme, and not with reasoning whē he came nigh him he said: Giant it seemeth guiltines in him y^e professeth to be a seruer of ladies to be negligent:
And

The first Booke of the third Part

And hauing such confidence in your strength, you might haue come sooner and assured your happines with my death.

And now seeing there is no more to doe, because thou shalt vnderstand how little I esteeme thee, these knights shall be witnesses and iudges on my part, whome I commaund, that if the Gods being enuious at me, do help thee, that they raise the sledge.

The couragious Prince of Tharlis, looked for no other thing, but turning about his horse, he behelde his Flora, from whence he knew should come his courage & strength, and prepared his speare against the Pagan, who likewise came against him.

Now haue I good occasion discret Thalia, to haue my rude tongue forged, for that it is so blunt, that I beloeue I cannot shew how these valiaunt Pagans, incountered in the middest of their swift course, with so great force, that Mars himself would haue doubted to haue met with them: and for that they were both strong, without any mouing in their saddles, they both passed the one by the other upright without receiuing any hurt, making the shiuers of their speares swift messengers of their strengths. At one time they returned with their heavy Paces, settling such blowes that both of them gaue shewe of their valors, and fell both vpon the pommels of their Saddles as dead men, and their horses carried them about the field, til such time as the Tharsian came vnto himselfe, and like a Lion he went against his enemy, with his uttermost strength, and befoze that hee recovered himselfe from that trouble some blowe, he gaue him another vpon his shield so great that it sounded as though he had stroke vpon a bell, breaking it all to peeces in his hand. Who seeing that it was not for defence he let it fall, and assailed the Tharsian with force, and with both his hands settled such a blow vpon his shield, that he made it to recoyle on his breast, that almost with the great paine hee was without sense, and there
withal

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

withall staggered in his saddle, but recovered it, it was the occasion that he was wholly kindled in quicke choler, and strooke so thicke vpon the cruell Pagan that hee seemed to grinde and bruse both bones and flesh, entring and going backe with such dexterity, that all who did behold the battaile greatly maruelled, that they so long endured in equal degree, without acknowledging any bettering betwene them.

But shee who receiued most blowes was the faire Flora, who seeing her Knight besoze such an enemy, and thinking him to be the same he was, her colour went and came in her face diuers times, shewing sadnes at euerie blow which her knight receiued: which were such and so many, that if she had not bene the reward of the battaile, he could not haue sustained them: but reinfozcing his courage, hee gaue such a blowe on the left side of his enemies helme, that it lacked little to haue ouerthrowne him from his horse, and made him to giue a fearefull shrieke with the grieve thereof.

The furious Giant did returne him an answer in such sort, that it seemed to disquiet him, it was so cruell: there anew began their furious combate, so that it seemed all the seruants of Cyclopien Vulcan were there ioyned together. The braue Pagan did lift vp his Pace and went to the gentle Louer, who withstood him, and put himself so much forwarde at the receiuing of the blowe, that hee could not reach him but with his armes, and let fall that heauy weapon with the strength of the blowe, leauing the poore Knight that he seemed as though he had been stonned, and being so nigh, the King sawe hee could not hurt him with weapon, he layd hands on him, and griped him in such sort that hee made him to doe the like, whereas was scene a gallant wassling, and by reason they were both of great force, the one could not reconer of the other any aduantage but were forcing each other with the contention of their wassling, that they made their horses to stoop on their
K knees.

The first Booke of the third Part

knées. They were but mortall, and to shewe they were such it was not much after foure houres battaile, so well fought (that Mars would haue bin weary) that they loosed one from the other, and breathed a while: then taking againe their Places, they began to lay on without any pittie, procuring the speediest way they could ouercome: it chaunced that the Tharsian did looke vp to the window where as his Lady was, and seeing that shee stirred not, leaning with her cheek on her hand, hee thought it was because she saw in him some weaknes: where with hee pressed to his enemy, and stroke him vpon the helme such a blow that he voyded bloud at his mouth, and fel vpon his saddle bowe. Euerie one thought he had been dead for that they saw his horse carry him about the field: but within a while he came to himself, without comparison much more malicious then the angry Viper in the sandy Libia, and with both his handes he gaue an answer to his contrary so rigorously, that hanging down his armes and voyding bloud, it made him in that state that his horse carried him towards the window wheras the Princeesse was, who seeing her Louer in that case, her heart would not suffer her to see so heauy a sight, but she turned her back, at such time as the greued youth came vnto himselfe, and seeing the backe of his Flora, considering from whence it did proceed, he picked forth his great horse, and assailed the Pagan, and raising himselfe in his stirrups, with both his handes he gaue him such a blowe vpon the crest of his helme, that he buckled it vnto his head, where with he had a great fall to the ground with so great griefe vnto his people, that it forced them against reason, and without considering what their Lord had commaunded, trusting in their great multitude, to giue an assault, saying: Strike downe and make dye that cull knight that hath slaine our Lord: but that incouraging was to their hurt and damage, for y the valiant louer seeing them to be a vile kind of people, returned to them so rigorously, that quickly hee made a broad way

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

way whereas he went. Those of the Cittie were not forgetful, nor the valiant Princes, for in a moment they opened the gates of the Cittie, whereout came all the knights, and before them the three pillars of Knighthood, and set upon their enemies (who were without Captaine) making great slaughter, wounding and killing with such force, that quickly the field was witness of their crueltye, all to besprinkled with Cilician blood, and in such sort they did presse them, that at the euening they had almost none to fight with, & followed the chace vnto the seaside: there it was that the Argentarians, did most at their content make reuengement, and remained rich with the spoiles for many yeeres: and being honored for ever, they returned to their Cittie with little losse: yet they slew that day more then thirty thousand men, besides a great number of captiues. They were all amazed to see the knightly deeds of Roticleer, whome they esteemed in equall degree with Mars. The Kings receiued them all with that content, as they were wont to receiue such as were victors, increasing more their ioy with the hope they had to know what they were, who said that it should be done in the palace. When the gentle Lisarte caused to cut off the Pagans head, and made his Page to keep it til he came at the Palace, whither they went. And being all set down, the valiant Charisian rose vp, & with the head in his hand, went & knéled down before his Lady, who was the ioyfullest woman in the world, saying. Sir Knight, Iupiter reward you for that you haue done this day for me: for me to reward you I will not binde my selfe thereunto, neither doe I beleue that if I should venter my life for you it would bee a iust reward, considering what for me & my father this day hath bin done by you & your valorous frends, whome and you in the behalfe of these kings, I desire to pull off your helmes, and tell vs who you are, which shall be in regard of no duety, for that which is done is sufficient, but to leaue vs a memorie of your vertue and noblenes.

The first Booke of the third Part

I am there with content faire Princeesse, said Lisarte more than this both the time that you spent, when we were nourished together, bind mee vnto I am Lisarte the Prince of Tharsis, and haue not made my selfe known till such time as I had concluded this little seruice, which hath bene according vnto my strength, but not conformable to your desert. And therewith he pulled off his helme, which caused great contentment to all that were present, and his father had no end of ioy, in that he knew his sonne to bee so valiant.

The King (Father vnto the Princeesse) seeing that the Prince of Tharsis was a mean to raise the sledge from his Cittie, and to obtaine so glorious a victorie, hee went vnto the Princeesse and taking her by the hand, he gaue her for spouse vnto the valiant Tharsian, whereof hee was wonderful ioyous, and she no lesse delighted, which ioy I leaue to the consideration of true Louers.

This gallant Lisarte when hee sawe his fortune sure, turned to his new and welbeloued spouse, and said for that worthy Princeesse you shall bee more certified of my firmnes, and with what truth you are esteemed: I haue tarried vnto this time, for to haue you girt me with my sword, although this knight (pointing to the Trojan) gaue me the order of knighthood: hee would not, neither I my selfe would suffer it, but at your hand: yet forthwith I defied him to mortall battaile. Then he told them the occasion of the battaile, & the agreement, whereat they all maruelled. But the faire Princeesse because she would not be ingratefull for that which the three knights had done for her, said with a soueraigne grace. Welbeloued Lord I am content, you knowe that if I loued you, I doe loue you should make it manifest to all the knightes in the world. But yet I doe conclude this battaile, in that I see you haue better occasion to make long friendship, then breede any rigorous enemie, in seeing what this knight & his friends hath done for you, it is no iustice y you so euil reward the:
and

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

and the rather, in that he loues and esteemeth his beloved Ladie, which is reason, and liues to honour her, which is his dutie: and it were a fault not to defend her to y death: for there is no better loue, than that which is confirmed with deedes. And for that both of you are such Louers, I shall receaue great content that you doe confirme true friendship with him: and I will sweare the same vnto his Ladie, till such time as my fortune grants that I may see her to confirme it: and on this condition I doe giue ye with this sword, not to offend but defend so meritorious a knight. So taking him vp, shee caused them all foure to embrace, vniuing vndeuided friendship, as Lisarte and his people expressed in the great warres at Constantinople, where hee shewed his loue to the Trojan: who (with the rest) greatly thanked the Princesse for confirming that league. The Princes would forthwith haue departed about the Damselfs business: but at the request of the betrothed Ladie, they taried ten dayes. In which time the Trojan maintained a gallant Iust.

The new betrothed princes in this time vsed such cunning (although but yong beginners in Loues wished delights) y then was begotten one of the mightiest knights among the Pagans, prouing so valiant, that he was held for one of the Greeke Princes, with whom he had great friendship, but especially with Clarimante, as shalbe declared in the second Booke of this third Part.

The ten dayes ended, the Princes undertooke theyr journey, with great griefe vnto the faire Flora, who affected them greatly. The new married Lisarte did greatly desire them to let him goe in their companie, but they would not consent therunto. At their parting, the braue Greeke did declare vnto them who he was: whereat they much grieued, seeing they had not done him the honour hee deserved. In recompente whereof Lisarte promised to visite him in the Empire of Grecia, although hee could not performe it so soone as he intended: but when he went, it

The first Booke of the third Part

was in companie with his Sunne, and they were called the Knights of the Sunne: vnder which name they dyd wondrous deeds.

Manie rich gifts being bestowed on the three Princes, they tooke their way with the Damsell (in Rosicleers enchanted Boate) towards the famous Cittie of Lyra in the Kingdome of Lacedemonia: where we will leane them, and returne into France, to see what amorous aduentures there hapned.

What chanced to Torismundo Prince of Spaine in the Kingdome of France, the ende of his loue, with the departure of Don Heleno Prince of Dacia.



Left the faire Princesse Grisalinda, amorously passionated with meditation onely on the Knight in the blacke armour: which thought had so possessed her hart, that her chaste desires could no longer resist: for this amorous fier where it findeth resistance, burneth with moze furie. In such sort it troubled this tender Ladie, that the conuersation of the Ladies was nothing pleasant vnto her, all her content is now to conferre with her cousin the Duchesse, and Alcisa (for so was the Damsell called) about her vnknown beloued. Alcisa comforted her with manie examples of Ladies, who merely hid their amorous græfe, and obtained a quiet and honourable end, as the faire Oliuia, & the worthy Claridiana: for saith she, in the sea of Loue they alone can tell how to saile in faire weather, that patiently endure the tempests, knowing that in the end they shall attaine the desired port. I my Alcisa (said the Princesse) if there were anie hope of obtaining, it were somewhat like: but for a Ladie to loue, and take delight in her owne affection, the beloued not knowing her faith, what comfort can sustaine her: or expressing first her affection, how can it be but she erreth against y^e modest order of Ladies, who know

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

know by experience they are beloued, before they make a
nie show of thankfulness. This (said the Damsell) is the
greatest erreur that is made in Loues warre: for some in
setting before them the simple poynt of honour, haue con-
uerted their ioy into lamenting, and dyed solitarie, for that
they would not liue with companie. How much moze doth
the royall priuiledge of loue stretch farther than this: not
iudging it dishonour to put backe a little honozable fame,
for the content which loue bzingeth. Leauz off then Ma-
dam this wayward nicenes, and be not ashamed to vtter
what your heart feels. If you will assure me to comfort
this worthie Knight, and honour him with your loue, I
will goe seeke him in the Forrest, and make him the hap-
piest among men. Do good Alcisa (said the Princeesse) and
binde me euer to be thine: but I pray thee be not too lauish
to biter my affection, yet bzing him to the Court, and see
how I will reward thee: nay, rather say my selfe will be
his reward, than he should be slacke in comming. Alcisa
promised to goe, where with the amorous Ladie was som-
what comforted, and dissembled the grieffe that she suffered
for his absence, and receiued content to see the Iustes and
Tozneyes that were made for her sake.

Then flourished Knighthood in that Court moze than
in anie in all the world: the occasion was, that the King
did intreate Strangers verie well, in giuing honour vn-
to those that deserued, lodging them within his Pallace:
insomuch that all the Court was full of knightes, who
came at the same and report of those Triumphs, and to
behold the faire Grisalinda.

They who shewed themselves most excellent, were the
Princes of Geneva and of Claramonte, the last being a
rough youth, and verie amorous of the Geneva princes si-
ster, that was in companie with Grisalinda: also the Duke
of Pera, all valiant knightes. But aboue all for bzauerie
was the couragious Duke of Sonia, a yong Knight and a
valiant, who serued the Daughter of Arminca the Kings
Brother,

The first Booke of the third Part

Brother. She was verie faire, and called Liciana, nothing agréued to be beloued of such a Knight, making shew of her affection vpon all occasions. To this great Court did the pzince of Phrighia come, being a yong knight & of great strength: who trauellling to seeke aduentures, heard of triumphs, and purposed to shew his Knighthood. Whether came also the King of Carthage, called Pontenio, a valiant Youth, and of the race of Giants. The pzince Riendarte of Phrygia, when hee saw the great beautie of the pzincesse, affected her entyrelly, but dissembled it till he had made shew of his person.

The Challengers were the Dukes of Soma and Pera, and great prizes were ordained by the King, to be giuen to the best Deseruer. The Justes were ordained to begin the first of May, and end at Midsummer, by which time they expected the pzince Clauerindoes comming.

When the appointed time was come, it seemed that Paris was a celestiaall Cittie, so much and so excelent musike was heard therein. The same daye early the King banquetted all the pzinces, that they might haue time for the Justes: which banquet ended, the Challengers armed themselves, and came forth conforable to their estates. Both had greene armour full of flower de Lucis, & manie precious Stones amongst them, with their capparisons of the same: each had to attend them fiftie pages in green veluet, cut vpon gold Tinsell. In their shields was all their difference: the Duke of Soma for that he liued beloued, had on his shield his Ladie painted, with a crowne of fragrant lillies on her head, and this posie for the border.

Crownd for curtesie and beautie,
By desert and my bound dutie.

He rode gallantly forwards, making obeysance to the Ladies, the high Constable of France carrying his shield and speare.

The

of the Mirroure of Knighthood.

The couragious Duke of Pera had on his shield a hart pierced thozough, with this posse.

She is faire whom I regard,
Yet thus she doth my hart reward.

The Duke of Bauier did carrie his shield, and another Noble-man his helme. When they came to their standing, manie Knights as wel Naturals as Strangers (desirous of honour) came forth vnto the Jousts. The Duke of Soma was the first that began, against whom came a French Knight called Raymiro, on whom all people fixed their eyes. They each assaulted other with the force of their armes and swiftnes of their horse, till in the middelt of the great place they made their incounter so mightely, that the Duke failed one stirrop, yet passed by, and overthrow the Frenchman with a great fall vnto the ground. When they greatly esteemed the Duke of Soma, for that the French Knight was known to be valiant. Then came forth a Spanish Knight, called the stout Salandrio, who clasping well his legs, went against his Contrarie, where they made terrible encounters: the Spaniard lost his reynes, which was the occasion for them that knew him, the more to esteeme the Duke of Soma. They recovered each of them again a great speare, and with double courage assaulted one the other, that the people were all in doubt, till that in the midst of their course they encountered in such sort, that the strong Spaniard lost his saddle, and the French-man his stirrops: yet in recovering, he leapt vp on his horse againe verie lightly, giving great content vnto his Ladie, who was ioyfull of that which her gallant Knight had done. She was talking with the faire Orosia, who was desirous to see what her Prince could do.

Then the Duke of Soma left the lyst, and gaue place for the braue Duke of Pera, who for that he was in disgrace

The first Booke of the third Part

grace of his Ladie, his blowes were mortal, so that in ten courses hee ouerthrew eight knights dead to the ground: till such time as on the one side of the place, came in that stout Pagan Pontenio King of Carthage, all in blew armour with white bends, and mounted vppon a mightie Roan horse.

Of this Moze speaketh Artemidoro, who made promise vnto his Ladie, to trauell in the world two yeres in praise of her beautie, and to carie to Carthage al y names of them he should ouercome, where she remained all the time that he trauelled in performing that rigorous & hard promise. And for that he was absent, hee wore his armour of that colour, and on his shield the picture of Faith placed in the heauens, with this posie.

More than humane is thy hope,
my assurance is diuine:

Faith and vowes in heauen are fixt,
Thine am I, and thou art mine.

This kingly Moze caused much expectation of valiantnes at sight of his person: who entring the lyst tooke a great speare, and spurring his fierce horse, they came & made their encounter in the midst of their course, with so mightie blowes, that the Moze passed forwards vpight, without anie staggering, which made them all glad: but he of Pera made a little mouing in his saddle. Forthwith they tooke other speares, and with double courage they made their encounter, in such sort that y Duke came to the ground, the gythes broken, and the saddle between his legs, whereunto was attributed his fall. The Moze crossed to the counter lyst, his horse doubling vnder hym, but he recovered him verie lightly. The Duke put the fault in the gythes, and would haue returned to the iust againe, whereuppon they had like to haue come together, till such time as the Judges did determine that it was an ouer,

of the Mirroure of Knighthood.

ouerthrow. Then did they sound an infinite number of instruments, and (being asote) the Duke mounted on his horse without putting anie foote in stirrop.

There hee did carrie the comming forth of the other Maintainer of the Lists: who came forth with so much cholar, that all stood still to behold him: and not without some doubt to the faire Liciana, fearing to see him in some perill.

They encountred with the swiftnes of their horses, & ioyned shivering their speares into small splinters, & passed by well settled. Other speares they tooke, and yed the like, till such time as the Duke being angrie at so much delay, chose a great speare, and encountered the courageous Duke so strongly, that it did not profite him to be beloued or amorous, but he must come to the ground: neither went the Pagan free, but receiued one of the greatest encounters that euer he sustained in all his life, so that if he had not embraced his horses necke, he had salne as well as the Duke did. But in settling himselfe, he began to do manie gallant trickes in the field, at the sounding of the instruments.

In such sort he behaued himselfe, that before evening he ouerthrow to the ground more than thirtie well approued knights, whereby hee was esteemed to bee one of the most valiantest knights in all the world. And for that it was verie late, there was not anie Prince of worthines or estimation, that would make proufe of his valor till the next day.

With great care was the discret Alcifa all that day about that which she had promised vnto the Princesse Grisalinda, and for to put it in effect, she intended the next day to goe forth vnto the place appointed between her and the frendly knights. Who (so soone as they were forth of the Cittie) went with their Pages into the wood to rest themselves, whereas before they did eate.

The first Booke of the third Part

The night being well spent, they returned vnto y^e Citie, and lighted at a house, whereas they left they^r horses in good order: so they pulled off their helmes, and wth their strong habergins which they wore and their swords they went forth to walk: and for that there was so much people, they were not looked at, neither their entring into the Pallace marked, whereas the braue Spaniard contented himselfe with the sight of his Ladie and Mistres, and vnderstood the successe of the Iustes, with purpose to returne thether within two dayes. At their comming in the tables were taken vp, which was the occasion, that they might at ease content theselues in the sight of the ladies, for that the king did admit Dauncing that Night. They being there in this sort, the King of Carthage entered, and for that the knights did not giue him way at the first, he being somewhat proud (which obscured his doeds) he said: Doe you not see knights who entreth, for to the wth the curtesie that becomes ye. The Spaniard was gentle by nature, but being in high and louely imaginations, he answered: And thou knight, indued more with pride than good manners, dost not thou see vs that are here, and aske license for to come in. The Moore would not indure that answer euen of Mars himselfe: and therewith layed hand on his sword, as also did three or foure of his knights that came with him. But when the Dacian did see that all the mirth was turned vpside downe, he quickly made a large way, for that at two blowes he ouerthrew two dead to the ground, and recovered the doore, because they should not be compassed about. The Spaniard who was verie desirous the Carthaginian, reached him a little blow on the head, which was the occasion that all the kings Guard were in an uproare. The which these two friends seeing with a trice they were in the Court yard: and making so good shift as they could, they left fire dead, and so went towards their lodging, til such time as the people in the palace were in quiet.

The

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The King straight waies commanded search to bee made who it should be that were the doers: b2 but reason there were so many, it could not bee knowne who they should be. The tumult was only that night, so2 that from that time so2wards, there should none enter into the Pallace with armour nor without license, on any day that daunces were admitted.

The Spanish and Dacian Knights as they were yong men, and that their bloud wrought more in them thā sleep, would not goe to rest, till they had gone round about the Pallace, and so2 that it buttred vpon so gallant and delightfull gardens, they might there passe away the time, till the night were farther spent, and drew nigh to that quarter whereas the Ladies were, which buttred towards the gardens.

The Prince of Spaine knew it, so2 that hee was there before: and comming more nigher, they heard a deuine voyce, which at the recording of a Base, did sound verie sweetly, which gaue great comfort vnto the Princes: they were verie light, and giuing the one the other their hands they leapt into the Garden: being within they went by little and little till they came so nigh the windowes, that they might discerne who played, which were three Ladies that stood at an Iron grate window in the Moone light: the one of them had a Lute, and beginning a new to sing, they came so nigh, y2 not onely they heard the musicke, but also what they did talke: and they heard one of them say. Faire Grisalinda if the Knight with the blacke armour were so fully certified, how you loue him, as we are of your voyce, there should not need any other helpe but his presence so2 you to ease your sorrowfull life. The Princesse answered: Ah Orosia I am so fortuneles that I beleue none is able to certifie what my soule requireth, o2 what my heart doth suffer, so2 as yet I know not whome to loue: it may be the Emperesse of Trapisonda, o2 the pærelesse Queene of Lira, who hath taken that armour, and pittying

S 3

ing

The first Booke of the third Part

ing my necessitie hath taken vpon them the baffle. Of this you may lue well assured, said the Damsell Alcifa, for they are men, although in grace and beauty, they may be compared with these worthy Ladies.

Well if it be so (answered the afflicted Ladie) how can they lue, who so trauell lone, and haue so little hope, or none at all of remedie? for by his absence it appeareth hee hath a mistresse, to whome he doth pay the true tribute of his thought, and this is the cause that I onely in the world am fortunelesse. I am perswaded (answered the other Lady) that he respecteth something in this Palace: for that if you remember at such time as he looked towards the place whereas you were, he was intranced in his imagination, which is a plaine shewe that there is something that causeth his grieve in our company. I beseech God said the Princesse, that it proue so, then shall I lue in hope to see him: but in the meane time giue mee that instrument, for I will make these trees witnesses of my grieve, and the birdes that build in them: with this the playde like a second Orphens, and to the instrument she song this song, with an Angellicall voice.

If Mars vnbinde these bands of Venus Sonne,
Wherein the boy intangled hath my thought,
Ioy and delight vnto my heart will come:
Els valors fight I haue too deere bought,
And ceasles I (compelled) must complaine,
Loue layd the plot to kill me with disdain.
Or if braue knight thou twist thee in these bands,
That me in snare and nere will be vntwinde:
He yeeld mine honor to thy princely hands,
Or dye distrest, if thou doe proue ynkinde.
And Swanlike sing vpon my dying day,
Of life and loue no more, no more, away.

of the Mirroure of Knighthood.

This Lady concluded her song with an earnest sigh, so that I know not any but would have been moued thereat, and after a small pause shee said . Oh Princesse of France, how is it that in thy tender age thou beginnest to feele lones lawes? Little (but cruel) God, why hast thou made me subiect, I know not to whom? Ah now I perceiue my life is but short, seeing in the beginning thereof, so much grieve hath bene reserved for me.

If thou delight proud Loue to haue me serue thee, why hast thou bound mee to one whom I knowe not where to find? What triumph hast thou in such my affliction? Ah faire Orosia, help me to ban this false bewitching boy, this theefe of hearts: but all is vaine, he will bewitch, and wee must honoꝝ him: all our exclaymes are idle and bootlesse passions. Then taking the Lute she againe sang as followeth.

Gentle Loue commaundeth me,
To his helts I must agree:
Though my loue I neuer see,
Yet must I his louer be.

Sweet loue from this rigour stay:
No no no no thou must obay.
If I yeeld how can I tell
Where my wandring loue doth dwell?
His regard would please me well,
His disdaine prooue worfe than hell.

Loue then from this rigor stay.
No no no no thou must obay.
If I yeeld I thee inioyne,
By thy Psiches gentle eyne,
And thy beauteous Mothers shrine,
That my loued may be mine.

Elsthy cruell rigor stay,
No no no no thou must obay.

She

The first Booke of the third Part

She ceasing this sweete and amorous song, they heard the other Lady sayd. Hope (faire Grisalinda) in thy good fortune: what, comfort your grieve with courage, seeke helpe of the beloued, which must remedie you of all paine, other hopes but illusive.

If this werre so, answered the Infant, that I knowe where to seeke reamedy, my grieve should not hurt me. It is not so vncertaine, answered Alcisa, for I will to morrow seeke these Knights, and if occasion be offered, I will certifie your Knight the paine that for his sake you suffer.

As my Alcisa said the Princeesse, if you doe so you may reuiue soule: for now liuing I dye, hauing surrendred my wil haue no power, but to loue, & there is no end set for this tempestuous trauaile of my thought. I doe beleue said Alcisa, that at these new triumphes, they being Knights and desirous of honoz, first they will shewe their valiantnes in the Court befoze they will depart out of the Countrie, whereas I know they haue found some remedie for the grieve they brought.

When they are amorous answered the ielous Princeesse. No said the Damsell, but I heard them praise a Lady much, and said they should neuer forget her, if memorie did not faile them, to remember the good which by her they had receiued. But seeing it groweth somewhat late, it shall be good that we depart, where by the Ladies do not conceiue any thing of our long being heere, for it will be no small occasion of suspicion.

So they departed, leauing the two friends in obscure darkenes, seeing her absent that with her presence did ease those inward desires which the Spaniard suffered, although he was greatly content to haue scene by experience the loue which the Princeesse did beare him, that without knowing who he was, or any farther consideration she was so wholly surrendred to him, and feared hee would not omit her faith.

Then

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

Then the worthy Dacian said, Lord Torismunde, we may now goe with great securitie, & worke some meanes to comfort your Lady, and it shall bee some ease to your griefe, in reuiuing her: to morrow we will be at the fountaine against the Damsell come, and of her wee shall vnderstand the order that wee must vse in this our busines, for by her helpe wee shall make the way easie to take her from France, carryng her for Spaine, & considering with whome she is, her father wilt easily pardon her: and if it doe not chance to your content, they shal cut in peeces the Dacian Prince before they shal haue her from our power. With this they turned out of the garden, and went towards their lodging, where as their Pages tarried for them, with great griefe for their long absence: but when they saw them they were glad, and slept quietly the rest of the night that remained: but at the breake of the day couering their armor because they would not be known, they went into the Forrest where as the Damsell should come, to giue the knowledge what had passed in the court: Who in the morning being masked went forth vpon her Palfrey, right vnto the place appointed, but missing a little the way in wandring amongst the trees, foure knights met with her, who seeing her beautie and disposition, they would haue vnhorsed her, but she vsing the vsual weapon of women, cryed out, and the Princes did heare her, who were hard by.

The braue Spaniard finding himselfe fullest armed, a foote as he was went vnto them: they were all alighted with the poore Damsell, who cryed out for succour. And when he came thether hee knew her not, but being choloricke, he put himselfe amongst them with his sword in his hand, saying: Away vile Knights, and laye no handes on the Damsell, if you doe you shall dye for it, and reaching the first vpon the head, in rewarde of his folly he cut it downe to the shoulders.

The thre which remained, seeing the death of their
com.

The first Booke of the third Part

companions, and that he was but one onely, drew their swords and went to him.

But this warlike youth so behaued himselfe amongst them, that he stroke the second such a blow vpon the arme that arme and sword fell both to the ground, who seeing himselfe lamed, he beganne to cry out and runne into the Forrest, whereas within a while after he yelded vpon the ghost: the other two purposing to be reuenged, they assaulted him. He seeing their ouermuch contempt, payed them in such sort, that at two blowes he made them beare the first company, with great content to the Damsell, for that she saw it was her knight. And taking off her maske she went vnto the knight with her armes open, saying: I did well know Sir knight, that if any succour did come vnto me, it should be from this mightie arme. Happy Alcisa that hath come to knowe the best amongst knightes in her behalfe.

This amorous Torismunde reioyced in his soule when hee saue the Damsell and knewe her, and said vnto her with great content, those false knights faire Damsell did not so much esteeme you as I doe, that so against your honor and my content would haue displeased you. Thankes be to God Sir knight, and your strength said shee, which gaue them their payment as they deserued, and according to my will, which shall bee alwaies ready in whatsoeuer for your content. At this time came the worthy Dacian with his sword in his hand, whereat they did not a little laugh: and the Damsell said vnto him. It well appeareth sir knight, who hath most care to doe mee friendship, for if I should haue tarried for you, I beleue mine honor had bin lost, & now I say that the lacke of care in the seruice of Ladies is verie euill, for at such time as it may bee lacked, that after it cannot be remedied with life, the which I would haue dispatched if these false knights had gon forwarde with their rigorous intent: but seeing that betwixt you two there is so great friendship, it seemeth that being

reine

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

remedied by your companion, I am bound to serue you both, which I wil do to my power. And therewith she declared why she came to seeke them, and gaue them to vnderstand of all that passed in the Court, and what the Prince of Phrigia purposed in loue towards Grisalinda. At which the Spaniard was so angry that he said, I vow that I wil no more put on armour if this go forwards, and forthwith I will go paie him the reward of his boldnes. The Dacian when hee saw him so determined, said, that hee should quiet himselfe, for that in these matters hast is not profitable. This knight is in France, and he cannot be so strong to resist vs: and seeing you haue not gone forth to the Iuste you may goe thether and deale with him. This Irefull Youth was somewhat appeased, but not in such sort, but that the Damsell plainly saw the good will which he had vnto the Princesse, and seeing it would not be taken in euill part she said. What is it to you gentle knight that the prince doth imploie his thoughts vpon Grisalinda? The Prince answered, to see the euill he doth to an other in procuring to loue where he deserueth not. And how are you certaine (answered the Damsell) of this euill which he doeth? My pooze armes giueth testimonie thereof (answered the Spaniard). Then sir knight you are he that excédeth the prince of Phrigia in loue. Not him alone answered the youthful prince, but all the world: and vpon this I wil enter into the field with all the world. Nowe am I glad answered the Damsell, for that you shal haue need of Alcisa. And how is it y he must haue need said the Dacian, what are you so much in fauour with the Princesse touching this knight, it is due to our desire in procuring her content with the earnest truth of our soules? I should doe verie euill worthy knights (said the Damsell) if I knew not my duty therin, & I wil put my life in hazard for your contents and for that you shal be certified of al, know that your companion is beloued, my Mistres affecteth him without knowing who he is: there is no need to keep in secret who ye are.

The first Booke of the third Part

And there with shee declared vnto them all that passed the night before, and all was to know who they were: but the Prince desired her on his part, to doe his commendation vnto the gentle Dutches of Savoy, and to certifie her what he pretended to doe in her seruice. When they agreed that the Damself should returne, and certifie them that they would heereat the iustes. So putting themselues in a secret place of the Forrest to repaire their armour, they saw come soorth of the same, a Damsell mounted on a great horse, and before her a fardell, and when she came vnto them she said vnto the Darian. Worthy Heleno, the wise man my Lord and thy faithfull friend doth send thee this armour, for that thou shouldst this day in the French Court, shew the royall blood from whence thou didst proceed. And to you Prince of Spaine for that he vnderstands you shall giue him great ayde and succour, he sendeth you another where with you shall make the beginning of your ease: and all other matters he witheth you to leaue to his power, for that he will doe therein as for my selfe. So without tarrying any answer shee returned like the winde, and they lost the sight of her quickly: with great ioy the knights took the armour, and left theirs hidden amongst the bushes, and with the help of the Damsell they were armed, that shee might know them and giue aduise vnto the Princeesse when they came thether: so with this agreement they took their leaue of her, and returned to rest themselues a little, and eate of that which their Pages had brought, ere they went to the iustes, the which at that time was begun so strongly that it gaue content to all the beholders: for the mightie King of Carthage was one of the strongest in all the country of Moores. This gallant Moore changed his armour, and put on one of a russet colour striped with green, bordred with blew vpon his shield was there a Phenix hard by his Lady, with this Verse.

The Knight and Lady both may liue secure.

When he is valiant, she a Phenix pure.

This

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

This gallant Carthaginian entred to be looked on : and after hee had compassed the Court , with a fierce countenance he put himselfe at the Lyft end to abide the Iusts. There wanted no knights to be in readines, and the first that would proue himselfe was the famous Lord of Claramonte, armed with strong armour, mounted on a mightie horse : who taking a speare, came and encountred his Contrarie so strongly, that they both staggered in theyr saddles, and the French knight lost one stirrop. But for that he was valiant, they iusted againe : but it happened other wise than he thought, for he fell on the ground wyth shame. Straight there entred in his place a gentle knight of Almaine called Agesilaus, who had three courses wyth the King, but in the end he left his saddle. Then entered the mightie Baldomes, armed in carnation armour, and his deuise in his shield was a bloodie sword. Hee beeing knowen of all, they said that there would be the best iusts of all that day. They met together with all theyr forces, without anie mouing, the like hapned the second & thyrde courses : but at the fourth, hee came to the ground wyth a great fall, & the Horse remained somewhat wearie with those strong incounters, yet passed forwards with a slowe pace, at whose balour they all reioyced. And from that time he began to do such wonders, y before it was one a clocke in the afternoone, hee had ouerthrowen sixtene knights. Then charged he his horse, and tarrying the Iust with a great speare, he saw enter on the one side of the place two knights, the gallantest proportioned that he had seene, & mounted vpon mightie horses. He on the right hand seemed to be most copolent, and was armed with a shining armour of an euill coloured yeolow, but in riches verie strange. All the buttons and woorkes were of white and red, which in the Sunne shewed gallantly, and could not be well discerned for the rich stones it had. There was a Croue painted on his shield, out of the which came forth a Ladie with a sword in her hand, as thogh she wold wound

The first Booke of the third Part

a Knight who was on his knees befoze her, shewing hys heart, with this Embleme.

If thou wilt smite, behold my hart :
Be kinde, or kill ; death easeth smart.

His Companion (who shewed no lesse grace and gallantnes than the first) was armed in armour quartered like a chesse with blue and gold : there was set about the quarters diuers kinds of pzeious stones, and all y^e ioints were lion tawney, and on his shield a shining heauen, & in the middest a Pellican, cherishing her birds with her owne blood, hauing this Motto.

Open thy breast, thou gentle Pellican,
And change we harts : els dyes a fainting man.

These gallant knights at their entrie gaue great hope: who crosing y^e place with their speares tipped with sharp and bright Steele, rid till they came to the galleries, where as the Princeesse was, who was feeding her sight wyth that ioyfull object. Vnto whom, the two knights (when they passed by) did their obeysance with a soueraine gallantnes : whereat the Ladies did some what raise themselves from their seates. The discret Alcisa did very wel know them, for that she saw them armed in the Forrest : and now hauing occasion to speake for her knightes, for that the passionate Princeesse did aske her if shee knewe them : she answered : Madam, I doe know them : for he with the Pellican is that happie knight of the blacke armour, to whom are due all good aduentures in the world, and whom of right I am bound to serue, for that he did not onely deliuer me yesterday from death, but did also defend my honour from foure rude knights that were desirous to spoyle it : and in payment of their boldnes he slew them, giuing me afterwards plainly to vnderstand, that he both
liue

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

liue amorous, and wil haue no other content, but y^e which cometh of loue, accounting you for his naturall owner, not desiring other reward, more than the glorie of your thought. I did well beleue my Alcisa (answered the amorous Ladie) that in yeelding my affaires to your charge, there could nothing redownd vnto mee, but that which should be comfortable: and there is small neede to perswade mee to that which I esteeme as my life. I perceiue said the faire Duchesse, that Alcisa will shew her dutie vnto the Knight of the Blacke armour, seeing shee did not onely learne of him that hee loued, but also I beleue she told him that he was beloued. Alcisa answered, I wil stand for my knight, and deale in his affaires as for mine owne, and more earnestly, hauing occasion. But thus I would that you would consider of, for I told him that hee might come this night and talke with vs by the Garden, whereas yesternight we were singing. Ah speak no such thing answered Grisalinda, for to imagine it is a grieuous offence to my reputation. Where can be no offence nor danger said the Damsell, seeing you loue and they knowe the place. For you shal vnderstand, that yesternight they heard all your singing and conference. Therefore seeing your affection is to him manifest, let me perswade you to meete and conferre, whereby you may know who hee is, and if there be no disparagement in his birth, I know not wherefore you should refuse to receiue him for the knight of your seruice. And now let vs looke what they doe, for I am certainly assured that these Iustices will be lamentable to some.

So all thre (the better to talke of their loue) did put themselves together, and beheld the knights, at such time as the mightie knight of the Grove (for so wee will call the Dacian) came and talked with the knight of the Pellican, (which was the Spanish Prince): and his conference was to this effect, that he wold let him haue the first Iustices, in the mean time y^e he contemplated on his Lady, who

The first Booke of the third Part

who apparelled all in russet tinsell with manie and costly
stones, was leaning on her bzeast at the window, and a
garland upon her haire, which seemed like Ariadnes Co-
ronet that beautifies the beaurn. The bodie of her gown
were somewhat open, and part of her snowie bzeast ap-
peared to her knight, who had pitched the great end of his
speare on the ground to behold that swete prospect, wyth
so great negligence, that it caused all the people to say, he
seemed as good a Lover as a Warriour.

With this the worthy Dacian came to the victorious
Pagan, and said: Gentle knight, seeing this is the office
of Gallants in service of Ladies, I would know if the
Jousts be free for all perils: So that you would agree (an-
swered the Horse) that it might be from the Tilt, I am
content. You understand me right said the Dacian, let it
be at your pleasure: and therewith they went into y great
Court, taking big speares with bright steelie heads: so
that all had great regard vnto their incounters, and ima-
gined that the knights were of great force.

Being in the great Court, they came to meete with so
mightie incounters, that it seemed vnto all and vnto them-
selues especially, that their armour had broken to peeces.
The Horse made his incounter in the midst of the Daci-
ans shield, with so worthy a blow, that he made hym fall
backwards on the buttockes of his inchaunted horse, and
if the speare had taken a little more hold, hee had ouer-
throwen him: but he incountred the strong Horse in such
sort, that (piercing his bzeast-plate with a little wound)
he overthrew him to the ground. He was no sooner falne,
but he rose vp againe with all lightnes possible with his
sword in his hand, abiding his Contrarie, who with an
easie pace on his horse came gretly amazed at that strong
incounter: and at his comming the Horse said vnto him.
Knight, thou art bound to perform the battel with swords,
seeing it was at all perills. I do not now receiue anie de-
light therein (answered the Dacian) for that we will not
trou,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

trouble other knights that would lust: for they that doe
demaund battell in generall Justes, make show as if they
be fore had some perticular defiance, which hath not been
betwene you and me, but for that the Tilt was somewhat
troublesome, I desired the open place, onely at more ease
to proue my launce. This knight hath reason in all his
speech said the Judges, and is not bound to admit the bat-
tell, not hauing any will thereunto. When you doe mee
wrong, answered the Duke. Let it not greeue you sayd
the Dacian Prince, for if you thinke to receiue such plea-
sure by triall of a battell, I will abide your comming ten
dayes hence within the woodes of Ardenia, where if you
doe not ease your stomacke, it shall be your owne fault, &
none in mee for the performing of my word. Let it be as
thou wilt answered the Duke, although I should receiue
greater pleasure if it might bee now. Well, since thou
wilt needes said the Prince, mount vpon thy horse, and he
that first loseth his saddle or any part thereof, let hym be
ouercome, and remaine at the will of the other. This is
great curtesie said the Duke, and so with a trice he mou-
ted his horse, and put hand to his sword, and embracing
his shield he went against the Dacian: who met him, and
together they stroke such blowes, that they humbled the-
selues to their saddle bowes. All that were in the great
pallace stood still to behold that cruell battell, saying one-
ly the amorous Spaniard, whose powers of his body wer
all in suspence, remaining onely glad by sight to get ease
for his soule. Whereat the gracious princeesse receiued no
small content, to see him so busied onely in beholding her
beautie. The worthy Heleno raised vp himselfe very an-
gerly for the great blow hee had receiued, and seeing that
in giuing and receiuing of blowes was onely a delaye of
the battell, and a cause not to giue place to his friend for
to doe that which was reason, he determined to aduenture
it vpon one alone blow, trusting in the strength and nim-
blenes of his inchaunted horse, and therewith seeing that
the

The first Booke of the third Part

the Moze returned moze furious than a lyon, hee made show as though he would stand and abide him, and at the time he should receiue the blow, hee spurred forward bys light horse, and made him at a spring to enter so nigh, that the Moze could not strike him, but with the hilt and pom-mell of his sword: and although it was such a blow as the Dacian felt, yet it was moze troublesome for the Moze, for that hee felt his wrist thereby greatly pained. Thys skilfull Youth desired no other thing, but at that instant stretching forth his left arme, he let fall his shield, and ha-ving time, he laid his strong hands on the Moze, and held him so fast, and so quickly spurd forward his furious horse, that ere he returned to himselfe, the Prince carried him by the armes out of the saddle, with a great shout of them that were in the Court, publishing his valour. In this sort he carried him vnto the place whereas the Judges were, demanding of them if hee were bound to doe anie moze: So of truth sir Knight said they, for yours is the honoz of the battell in the face of all the world. The Pagan made no reply, but desired to returne and proue himselfe again with the Knight, and desired him to mortall battell, which the Judges would not suffer. The Prince with quiet pace put himselfe into the Court, choosing no iusting speares, but speares of fine and pure Steele. There lacked not some Knights, which were come thether desirous to get honoz, who proued their aduentures with the prince, but by reason all went on his side, some he left without life by his rigorous incounters, and others without anie desire to returne and proue him againe: till such time as they saw three Knights, euerie one in a sundrie part to enter into the Court. Hee that came first was the proud Tribano King of Argier, although after he humbled himselfe to the amorous yoke of Cupide, and thereby lost a great part of his pride: and so now he went seeking at whose hands he should lose it altogether, and by chance his good Fortune brought him to the Dacian Youth.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

He came armed in purple armour full of graine Artichokes, and of great price. There was painted vpon his shield the God Cupid, with that rigourousnes as in auncient time he was painted, with his bow & golden arrowes, his face somewhat discouered, and he compassed about with foure most furious lions, whom he seemed to lead bound in a slender thrid, with this posse.

Loue the Lions heart doth quaile,
No powers against his darts preuaile.

All remained greatly delighted with the Deuise on his shield, as wel as at his gallant disposition: for in shewing it he put himselfe to encounter with the Dacian, parting the one from the other with the lightnes of their horses, & meeting in the middelt of their course, they gaue heauie blowes, but they passed with great swiftnes without anie mowing: the like hapned at the second and third courses. When taking new launces, they encountred so stronglye, that their speares with a thousand shiuers flew into the ayre, and they meeting together with their horses, it seemed as though a great house had fallen downe. And by reason that the strength of the princes horse was so great, there was no resistance found in his contrarie, but that hee and his Owner came to the ground, and the prince staggered so on the one side, that hee could not stay himselfe: and because he would not be noted, hee tooke it for the best remedie to leape from his horse, the people giuing a ioyfull cry, for they all affected him verie much. By this time the valiant Spaniard had left his loue-france, & seeing his friend awote, spurred his horse with such grace, that the sight of the ladies followed him. When hee came to Heleno, hee intreated him to giue place, that he might as well manifest his strength, as he had shewen his loue. The Dacian departed the place, and the Spaniard with a great speare in his hand put himselfe at the lyfts end.

The first Booke of the third Part

There wanted not one to come into the Lists, with desire to get more honour of that new knight, than the duel that was past. The first which entered was the dreadfull King of Cyprus, who did meruailously affect the faire Orosia. This Moore came in red armour, full of golden Sunnes, their beames stretching forth with diuers colours which beautified the show: and on his shield there was a nosegay of flowers, which a faire hand seemed to giue vnto a knight that stood before it, with this poeie.

From this hand there commeth flowers,
That comfort all my vitall powers.

They came the one against the other so fast as their horses could runne, and encountred with so great force, that it seemed to the Spaniard hee was run cleane thorough: but the valiant Moore descended to seek flowers in y^e field, hauing it destined, for that the encounter seemed to come from the hands of death: and rising vp with shame, forth he went, purposing to giue as much occasion of weeping as there was then of laughter.

There is no question but the princeesse reioyced at this, to whom Orosia sayd: It seemeth vnto me (fair princeesse) your knight hath handled his affaires to day with discretion, reinforcing his courage by your beautie in the tyme he spent in beholding you, whilest his Friend did keep the place of Iusts. At least answered the amorous Ladie, if the content which he receiued in the beholding it, should be the occasion of courages increasing, I am assured ye beleeue, that he alone will ouerthrow all the knights present.

Forthwith appeared another gallant knight, being a valiant Tartarian, cousin vnto the unhappie Zoylo, that was slaine in the woods of Grecia by the hands of Brufaldoro, about the armour of Bramarant. He came in quest of his kinsman, and vnderstanding of his death, hee returned into Tartarie, for that he did inherit the kingdome,
Zoy-

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Zoylo being dead, and remained no lesse affectioned vnto the Greeks then his cosin, and did shew it at due time, that to him they did owe the restoring of Grece. He was called the curteous Andronio, who came vnto the Spaniard and said, gentle knight, I shal receiue great curtesie that before we do Iuste, you tel mee, if you be any of the Greeke Princes: for that my Launce shal bee moze to serue them, then offend them.

Of truth Sir knight (answered the generous Spaniard) I would bee one of them if it were but to ioy your friendship, I am none of them, although I hold my selfe for one of their frends.

Then I request you gentle knight, that our Iuste may be with speares of Iuste, for that I haue sworne by the faith of knighthood, neuer to them nor to any of their frends to be contrarie, for the frendship which they kept and doe keepe with the mightie Tartarian Zoylo, whose body they haue in their Country. I am content Sir knight to doe it in this, and in all what you please shal be granted: so they went to take each of them a Lance, he pondering in his mind of the force of vertue, that bringeth with it people of so farre and remote Countries. And taking their Speares they returned the one against the other, with the swiftnes of their horses, and broke their speares, as though they had runne against a Rocke, without any harne doing, and the like vnto the third, then they encountered on their shields so strongly, that they came vnto the ground, although the Spaniard with the reines in his hand, went to helpe the Tartare, whose horse was slaine with the blowe, and had one of his legges vnder him. And pulling it out, he gaue him the preheminence of the battaile, requesting him for to remaine in his place. The which although he did esteeme it, yet he wold not do it: he was forthwith serued of another horse in the behalf of the King, for that the Spaniard would not mount on his, til such time as it was brought to him, for he esteemed him

13

him

The first Booke of the third Part

him much, neither would the Duke goe forth of the place for the content he had of the knight, but forthwith tooke of a sandal that was vpon his shield, & discovered the fairest figure that might bee imagined. Which was the face of a woman, the most bright and shining in the world, insomuch that there were few in the place that might behold it, the brightnes was such, and taking it in his handes, he went vnto the Spanish knight, and gaue it him, saying: Gentle knight, now is accomplished that which a wise man of my Countrie told me, that I should lose my liberty with my shield, which I should giue vnto the first knight that should ouerthrow mee, and now it seemeth that it is performed. I would it were better for you: for whereas it was giuen mee, it was in some estimation. Because I will not doe any thing to gainsay your will gentle knight (said the Spaniard) I take it, and I giue you mine to vse in exchange, and I would faine win an owner that would sustaine it with the hono^r, as hee which doth giue it hath done, and so gaue him his, and took that of the Tartare, and neuer King receiued a better gift.

The faire Spaniard reioyced at the heart, when hee sawe howe well it became him for his doubtfull Loue: there was neuer Louer that had the like, and noting the faire face that was vpon the shield, it seemed it was the face of Grisalinda. And in reading the Poësie that was in it, he vnderstood that it was agréable to his imagination, and this it was.

Why should I complaine of absence,
Being ioyed with her presence.

There could not be giuen to this louing youth a thing that did more content him: so verie ioyfull he was, prancing his horse in the ayre, he put him selfe to abide the
Iusts

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Juste: then forthwith appeared the worthy Duke of Savoy, verie ioyous of the beautie of the faire Orosia, he entered with the companie that his estate required, with twentie Pages apparrelled all in carnation Veluet, with gold parchment Lace, cut vpon siluer Tinsell, which was verie sightfull.

The Duke entered with the same colour, mounted vpon a mightie fleabitten horse, the best that was in al that place (besides those of the two friends) with many plumes vpon his head and helme. The Duke of Ornos carried his speare, being an ancient knight.

In this sort he passed by the Ladies, whereas was his faire wife, who knew not where she was with ioy to see her gentle and welbeloued Lord, so well proportioned. The frefull Spaniard did know him by his deuise, which was a Sea, and in the middell of it a beauteous gally, and on the one side of it a Lady who gaue her hand to a knight that was in the Sea, with this Embleme.

I shall not sinke where my faire beauty sailes,
But floate sustained: so much my loue preuailes.

The grateful Spaniard would shew vnto the Dutches his bounden dutie, and how in earnest truth hee honozed her: for when hee should make his encounter, he made shew as if he erred in the blowe, and lifted vp his speare so that hee would doe the Duke no harme, and receiued the Dukes encounter vpon his newe and faire shield, which most grieved him.

The Duke thinking hee had sailde by chance, commanded other speares to be brought, and seeing him misse the second and third, he said. Sir knight I am beholding vnto that which you haue done, although heere it seemeth it might be excused.

The

The first Booke of the third Part

The Spaniard answered: My Launce (worthy Duke) is not accustomed, to seaze on that which his maister loveth, I desire not your hurt, but doe offer in what I may to doe you service.

Every one did much praise the knight, imagining certainly who it should be: but the Dutchesse when she saw the courtesie that hee used with the Duke, said unto the Princesse, from this day forwards faire Grisalinda, if yee were importuned to favour the knight of the faire portraiture (for so wee wil cal him) do not let this kindnes to the Prince my husband be unrequited: for hence forth for his valor and courtesie I wil euer study to give him his desert. For this Lady (said the Damsell Alcisa) wherefore doe you leave mee out in so iust a demand: who doth owe more unto the knight of the faire Portraiture than I: if he deliuered you from prison, he deliuered me from death and dishonour: so that on this wee must contend. And I will call in my ayde the knight of the groue, for although we are in one opinion, touching loue towards him, I know not from whence is taught this heresie in the law of loue, there must onely be one beloued. With such helpers answered the yeilded Lady, it is not unlike but that the knight shall obtaine his meeting, for here is nothing procured but for his content: yet let some looke to the fame of Grisalinda, since nowe the Princesse of France is in hazard.

Their sweet conuersation was cut off, for that the Sun was about to bathe her selfe in the West Ocean, and then there entred on the one side of the great Court, to the number of thirtie knights, al with upper signes of mourning. And the last was a valiant knight with the same deuise, his visor downe, with a great speare of clere and sharpe Iron, his shield all Steele, and in the middle thereof was painted Ielousie, with this Poësie.

My Loue lookes on me with disdainefull eye,
Which makes me full of watchfull Icalosie.

of the Myrroure of Knighthood.

At that instant hee was knowen to bee the Prince of Phrigia, for seeing with what stranges the Princesse did intreate him, hee liued the most passioned man in all the world, and his passion did pintch him so much, that hee was constrained to come, not as vnto soioyfull feasts and triumphes, but as vnto a rigozous and mortall battaile, suspecting that the Princesse did loue one of those twoo Knights. So that he came to desie them to mortall battaile.

In passing thozough the place, hee went directly vnto the Knight of the faire portrature and said to him. I wold know Sir knight the reward that shall bee giuen to him that shall conclude these feastes. The honoz of a victoz (said the Prince) and he to remain as most valiant, which is enough. This is for them that seeke honoz (answered the iealous Moore) and not for him that hath attained to the top of honoz, so that it seemeth vnto me all your glozie is but little, for that I wyll depriue ye of it in this place.

Thou comest with more confidence than is reason (answered Torismundo) and seeing thou wilt challenge me, let our prize be the head each of the other. Thou art confozmable vnto my desire (said the Pagan) and turning about his horse, he went against the Pouth, who taking a great Lance, burnished the head in the sight of his Ladie. & knowing that that Moore was he that desired to be her louer, he made his encounter with so famous a blow, that both Moore and horse fell both to the ground, hauing his loving brest pearced thozough with the speare, wher- at all began to make a still murmuring, to see the horse of the Phrigian Prince ouer throlone at one blow: those that came with him, who vnder their sad deuise were all armed, trusting in that they were so many, assalted the Prince with a heauie lamentation, saying: make dye that euill knight, in recompence of the death hee hath giuen to our welbeloued Lord.

Some encountred with him, and some thze we their
speares

The first Booke of the third Part

speares at him so strongly, that they almost heaved him out of his saddle, but being settled he pulled out his sword, and went against them, striking the first such a blowe, that he made him beare his master companie, cleaving his head downe to the necke, and from that time hee so dealt, that heaue it was for him who durst abide him, for that eyther without death or a lamentable life in being lame he went not from him.

The gentle Dacian and the mightie Tartare, seeing the villanie of those knights, went to ayde him, but there had been no need, if the king had not sent his guard to apprehend them: knowing certainly that it was the prince of Phrigia that was slain, unto whom he did not beare so euil will, but that he thought to haue bestowed his daughter on him: but the three valiant warriers began so to vse themselves, that verie few or none of the Phrygians remained: but by reason that the number of Courtiers were great, they were diuised to helpe themselves by the lightnes of their horse. The Dacian was behinde and the other two before, returning at fit times with such furie, that still they ouerthrew two or three to the ground, till such time as they got forth into the plaine, where picking forwardes with their horses, they were quickly a good way from them of the Citty, leauing them matter to talke of for many daies. So they put themselves in the thickest of the mountaine, whereas they stayed to see if they could discerne any body: and finding themselves in securitie, they alighted, and the two friends went and embraced the Tartarian Andronio, to whome the Spaniard said. I would sir knight that this fauor, which fortune hath shewed vs, in giuing vs your ayde, might so continue that absence might not take it from vs. It is I that do gaine answered the courteous Tartare, to inioy so good copanie, I will not say friendship, for that in me there is no deserte. I is so great answered the Dacian, that it is a vantage for vs to shut vp the perfect number of friends with so great
and

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

and courteous a knight: & then they began to giue each other to vnderstand of their doings, vnitng betwene them so great frendship, that indured for euer.

There with their Pages tooke out victuals to eate vpon the greene grasse, such dainties as the discret Alcifa had brought them, and so passed away the little part of the euening that remained, in swete conuersation, which is neuer moze excellent than among vertuous frendes. So that some auncient writers put humane felicitie in hauing frends. Alexander the great gaue great shewe of this content, when it was demaunded of him, whether he most reioyced, in that he was Lord ouer all the world, or to haue many frends: He answered, to haue frends, for that with them hee had gotten the name to bee called great. A saying worthy of such a Prince.

Now returning to the three that remained in the Forrest, hauing no other desire amongst them, but the one to giue content vnto the other.

The Dacian said vnto the Tartare: Tell vs gentle knight are you in loue for: those that bee subiecte vnto the lawes of loue, cannot possibly passe the night but in acknowledgement where their heart is: and if it bee in this Countrie, you haue no better occasion to speake than now.

I am a stranger in this Countrie worthy Prince (answered the Tartare) and as yet I haue had no time to beholde the beautie which hath bene tolde mee is therein, so that I thanke you there is no neede of this trouble.

If it be so (answered the Spaniard) it would bee a grieue to request you to goe with vs to the Citty, to help a lover. It shall not be grieuous (answered the courteous Andronio) but rather a ioy, to imploy my person in your content.

Tell then (said the Dacian) wee may not stay: and
there.

The first Booke of the third Part

therewith they left their helmes, and onely with their corselets couered with their Pages cloakes and their swoords, they went vnto the Citie: the which they found all in a uprore for the death of the Prince of Phrigia and his knightes, and none could euer imagine who they were that should doe it: so putting themselves amongst others they went into the Pallace, where as they saw the king, who commaunded, that they should with great diligence seeke out the three knights, that he might know who they were.

Where they vnderstood how that the king, to take some refreshing, would the next day with the Princesse goe forth to a house of pleasure which was in the Forrest, which gaue great content vnto the Princes, thereby thinking to haue better opportunitie. Thus they passed a great part of the night, till it was time to goe toward the garden, and when they were all three come thither, the Prince of Dacia leapt vpon a wall, and gaue his hand to the rest, so they entred with great content vnto the Tartare, that they would admit him in a busines of such import. The two knights went softly towards the windows, where they heard a noise, by which they thought that Alcisa was tarrying for them, and the Princes: but it was nothing so, for it was the Queene of Holand, and her daughter the faire Grisanea, cousin vnto Grisalinda (for that their mothers were sisters) who were in sweet conuersation at the windows: and to heare what they said, they all drew nigh vnto a bush of roses, wheras they might heare what the French Lady said. It had bin great gloze for this Court faire cousin Grisalinda, if this day you had been here to honoꝛ it with your beauty, although the knights should haue receiued grieve at your sight. Whereas your beautie was gentle princesse (answered the free Lady) mine wold haue made small shew but onely increase yours the more.

This is good faire Grisanea, said Orofia to see howe you lye deceiued, in the great quantitie, which nature hath be

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

bestowed on you, in making you the best and most esteemed, and now you come to compare with vs that haue the least. My Cousin and these Ladies of France are thankful for your long stay, for that your absence gaue place to them to be looked at, yea and esteemed, in drawing after them the eyes of those braue Aduenturers, as well proportioned for loue, as to ayd and succour Ladies. Danie haue told mee said Grisanea, that they haue shewed themselves both sightly and valiant, but especially those two that came in together last. Of that (said Alcisa) y death of the Phrygian prince will giue testimentie, by y hands of the most valiant in the world amongst Knights, and faire amongst faire Ladies. If with the like passion that you praise him (faire Damsell) he regard your beauty said Grisanea, without all doubt he hath boyn a way for reward the freedom of your will. There is no need to giue hym that said Alcisa, that so long since hath been put into hys hands, as into the hands of the best knight in all y world, and he which hath most done for the honour of France: and to serue him all the dayes of my life shall be my glory, and I will thinke all my trauell ease. If this knight had his Ladie here said the Hollandesse, he had little need for to watch, hauing so earnest a friend for him as you, he may liue without care of the great woe that those are wont to haue, which be touched with this passion. I perceiue by this said the French Ladie, you know well this euill by experience, for that ther is none that can cast these doubts, but they that haue felt Loues greefe. Things are known ladie said Grisanea, without experience, for we may iudge of them by report. Not touching the euill that Louers do suffer said Orosia, for that it neuer commeth to a certayne and limitted end: for when the Louer thinketh his pain is pittied after he hath spent his life therein, he is still abhorred. I beleue Madame said Grisanea, you that haue bin such a seruant to Loue, can tell all the troubles thereof. Faire Princeesse answered the Sauoyan Lady, I hope al-

The first Booke of the third Part

So to see the time, that you may talke by costly experience,
and not be beleued so easely, as you beleued me, without
knowing my glozie or gréefe. And in recompence hereof,
in the behalfe of these Ladies, I doe request you to let vs
bee pertakers of your voyce: for according as it is here
sayd, there is not the like to bee heard in this Countrey.
You shall see Adam said Grisanea, I will obey you in all
I may, but I shall now put you out of all doubt my voyce
is not so good as it is reported. And therewith she tooke a
harpe, and began to tune it with so excellent order and a-
gréement, that her gracing the gracious concord, began
new discords in the princely Tartarian, who prepared his
hart to giue in recompence for faire Grisaneas musique.
Pittie it was to see the amorous Princes new passion,
but on these gréefes tis bootlesse to shew compassion, for the
beloued onely can giue ease. The faire Ladie began, ma-
king the heauens a witnes: who reioycing at her musick,
did with their influence inspire the harts of all that were
present, kindling in them new cares of loue, & more than
all the rest the gentle Tartarian was rauished, his magi-
cal armour not being sufficient to withstand it, but her di-
uine voyce penetrated his soule.

Line you secure that I doo liue secured
From Loues allures, his witchings, and his woe;
I to his guiles will neuer be inured,
Ne doo I long his needlesse lawes to know.

Downe downe I sing, hey downe as merely,
As Louers sigh and mone incessantly.

Loue is a ioy ymixt with endlesse sorrow,
A clowdie heauen, a bright tormenting hell,
To day content, but quite vndone to morrow;
A flowring banke that harbors serpents fell.

Downe downe I sing, hey downe as merily,
As Louers sigh and mone incessantly.

Thus

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Thus scorning Loues sad weeping weladay,
I sit secure, and smile at others greefe:
And cheerly chaunt a glad some roundelay,
While they wring hands, and beg refuse releefe.
Downe downe I sing, hey downe as merily,
As louers sigh and mone incessantly.

This free Ladie had scarce concluded to make shew of her libertie, being shortly after taken by the gallant Tartarian, when as the faire Grisalinda said. Wee liue not here (gallant Princeesse) with so much freedome, nor in our Court doe we estrange the contents of loue: for wee see with how much sharpnes those are chastised that do declare themselves for rebells against imperious loue: but though we be not snared, we feare the time, and so maye you shortly for all your disdain. We haue had manie amongst vs that haue to day abhorred lones lawes, and to morrow repented it, accusing their rashnes, and acknowledging the same, as to a Prince, to whom now they pay iust tribute. And for that I doe desire it, I should reioyce to see you begin to lose some what of your strangenes, for that I am perswaded, with some new meanes Loue pretendeth to demaund accompt of the time you haue spent from vnder his banner and seruice. Let vs not put her in so much feare said the faire Orosia, for that in flying from it she may finde a partie whereon to imploy her thought, and not finding him, hold her selfe happie, if shee had neuer knowen so much libertie. Then said Alcisa wil I reioyce, to see how that is admitted which now so earnestly she condemneth: and taking the harpe out of her hand, shee gaue it vnto the Princeesse Grisalinda, who tooke it, saying. I know not (faire Cousin) whether in behalfe of Louers I can say anie thing, with an instrument tuned with so free hands. The three Knights attended his song, and verie earnest was the Tartarian, who said vnto his Friends.

The first Booke of the third Part

I doe not meruaile that in France there bee so valiaunt
Knights, for that there be Ladies to animate those whom
they loue, and kill them that they scorne. In this sort said
the Dacian ther is vantage in louing, if from thence pro-
ceedeth to be valiant. And perceiuing some new passion
had hapned to him in hearing them sing, hee said: Come
nigher, let vs heare what they will say in fauour of Lo-
uers. The Tartarian if it had not bene for discovering
them, would haue exclaimed against loue, because yet his
wound was greene, but so it festred, that at length he pro-
ued the truest lover of his time. The Spaniard was so
desirous to heare his Ladie, that he scarce heard what pass
betwene them, yet hee and the Moore at last went verie
nigh the window. When she began to play, she gaue a
heauie sigh, as a request to beg attention of him, whom
she little thought to be so nere her.

Where Loue lackes can be no life,
But an endlesse dying paine,
Compassed with care and strife,
Idle, bootlesse, wretched, vaine.

Loue is heauenly, Loue is holly,
They that scorne it wait on Folly.
Loue combynes two hearts in one,
By sweet Loue all ioyes increase:
Whence Loue dwells departeth mone,
At his sight doth sorrow cease.

Loue is heauenly, Loue is holly,
They that scorne it wait on Folly.
To be free and not to loue,
Sanage freedome I it hold:
Yet Loues fier Beasts doth moue,
Taming Tygers fierce and bold.

Therefore say I Loue is holly,
They that scorne it wait on Folly.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

I sing this sweet Cousin said the Princesse, for that ye shall vnderstand (as I told you) how reuerently wee doe esteeme of Loue. It well appeareth answered the Hollandesse, that you acknowledge an Owner: if it be so, let me know it, for vnto mee you may disclose the secretes of your heart.

God deliuer me (said Orofia) that I should impart my thoughts vnto so free a Ladie, for she neither knoweth how to ease græfe, nor rightly to pittie the griued. When I see (saie Grisanea, said the French Princesse) that the absence of your Louer dooth paine and græue you, then shall you finde me a comforter, and I will giue you knowledge of that little loue I haue; and I am so certain that it will be shortly, that I shall not erre ere long to say: God giue you ioy of your alteration. Meane while let vs depart, for feare we be too long mist. They gone, the Tartare stood confounded at the grace of Grisanea: at length he said vnto his Friends. Of truth worthise Princes, although I had verie earnestly iniurde you, yet you could not haue taken better reuengement, than to bring me to a place where I haue lost my libertie, not knowing who hath tooke mee captiue. The harme is so common (sir Knight answered the Spaniard) that it is esteemed as the most certaintie thing among Gallants, which professe the seruice of Ladies. But it is so strange to me (answered the Tartarian) that I cannot iudge thereof, but according to y^e græfe which it causeth. Thus conferring, and on the death of the Phrigian Lord, they tarried the retourne of the Damself, who likewise græued, that the Princes were forced to giue so long attendance.

At last they came both in their petticoates vnto y^e window, the princely Ladie trembling to see her selfe before her beloued Knight, imagining what offence she did vnto her fame, in comming in such sort: but the amorous passion did overcome all, so that they came vnto the window without feare, and made a little noyse for a signe. So the

The first Booke of the third Part

prince came vnto the window, which was somewhat low, and hauing no power to speake a word, he kneeled on his knees, demaunding her hands to kisse. They both remained silent, which thing is common betwene them that loue well: for when they meete, their eyes onely speake, their tungs are mute. The Ladie, seeing his dumbe passion, making strength of weaknes, said: I would not sir knight, that my comming hether at so vnfit an hower should cause you to iudge it rather rashnes, than the bond wherein I stand bound to you for the good you haue done me. Besides, Alcisaes perswasion, is the greatest cause of this boldnes. Deuine Princesse (answered the fearefull Pouth) I see well, that your excellence intendeth euerslingly to binde mee more and more by your manie fauours. That I should conceiue either rashnes or lightnes in this your humble visitation of mee, were agaynst my soule irreligious sacriledge, and against your deuine curtesie unpardonable blasphemie. I rather blesse my Fates, that haue reserued me to this happie hower, honoꝝ your pittie that hath respected my passions, and acknowledge my dutie to Alcisa for solliciting my sute so effectually. Your owne Deserts sir knight said Alcisa, was onely the solliciter in your loues sute. I for my life and precious honours preservation, am till my death your bounden hand-maid. And though vppon my soule I durst vnder take that neuer anie disloyall thought will enter into your couragious bzeast, yet is my Mistres charie of thys loue bargaine, for gentle knight, manie knights haue dealt vngently with gentle Ladies. Wherefoze ye must protest deeply ere she will beleue, and keepe religiouslye what you doe protest.

Ah gentle Damfrell said the Spanish Prince, to myne harts sorrow your eyes haue been the witnes. And if yee doubt me, I sweare by the religion of true knight hood, by all the vntained honour of rightfull armes, by the famous remembrance of my thrice reuerent Predecessors,

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

If Grisalinda will be gracious to her vowed knight, of a more constant seruant should no Lady in the whole world boast.

I doe confesse sir knight said the p[ri]ncesse that I am infinitely bound vnto you, and your bowes I verely beleue for true, but you shall pardon me for setting my affection, much more for plighting my faith to a knight whom I know not. Soueraigne p[ri]ncesse said the Spaniard, after I had seene you, and that this Damsell declared vnto mee your worthines, I haue procured things that rebound vnto your honour, seeking the certaintie means to perforce the same, and I haue not found any thing with more content than to put my life in your seruice, and desire no other payment but your acceptance. Touching my birth, I assure you I am the Sonne of a most royall king, and sole Heire of a rich and populous kingdom, all which hopes with my true hearts spotlesse loue I humbly offer at your feete.

The P[ri]ncesse held her peace awhile, pondering the weightines of the cause: but the discret Alcisa said vnto her, You need not Madam make anie stay hereat, but perforce his sute, although it be the greatest curtesie y may be granted: I will be his suretie he will be thankfull, and neuer contradict your pleasure, seeing with what plainnes you doe accept him. And therewithall perforce shee tooke her hands, and gaue them vnto the P[ri]nce, who inclosed them in his, not hauing anie power to speake, till y p[ri]ncesse said. At my pleasure I make no question but I shall be reuenged for so manifest wrong done thus against my will.

The p[ri]nce seeing her somewhat angrie, sayd: Faire Ladie, if the righting of these wrongs must bee satisfied with my death, let me now receiue it, and I will account it welcomer than death. And therefore (answered the p[ri]ncesse) will I not this time with deserved death punish you.

The first Booke of the third Part

Do not proceed anie farther said the Damsell, but pardon vs: and there with he offered to kisse her hands. Then she told him the next day she should goe to a house of pleasure, charging him not to leaue France without her licēse. Thus parted they, he returning to his friends the ioyfullst man liuing: and so his passion led him, that hee spake not to them till they came to their pages. The princes marked it wel, and laughed thereat: and the Dacian (though he were som what drowlie) requested to be partner in his ioy: He would haue answered, but their desire to sleepe, with another accident that happened, which shall be handled in the next chapter, brake off his pleasant discourse at that time.

What chanced to the Princes by Brandarte King of Cyprus and his Knights: and how they deliuered out of his power all the Queenes and Princesses that he had taken prisoners. Chap. 9.



The worthie Torismundo (rauiſhed with ioy to ſee himſelfe ſo fauoured, intended to pertake his ioy with two friends: who being wearie were laid to ſleepe, and hee hauing as much neede, meant to beare them companie, but they wer ſcant aſleep, when a noiſe of horſes did diſturb them, yet they let them paſſe, till by and by there followed others, which diſquieted the in ſuch ſort, that they prepared to take horſe and followe them: but on a ſodain the Damsel who befoze had brought them their armour came forth with a fardle, and making her ſelfe knowne vnto them, ſhe ſaid. The Wiſeman my maſter commendeth him to you, and biddeth you to weare this armour to day: and to you valiant Tartare (for the ayde and helpe that one daye the Empire of Grecia ſhall haue of you) he doth ſend theſe armes, ſo with them ſhall happen the greateſt & firſt content that now ye can deſire.

And

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

(And as the other time) without any more tarrying, they departed: leaving them greatly content, for that the armour was as good as they had seene. When they left their other with the beauteous shield amongst the bushes, and with great speed armed themselves, and mounted on their horses, they went forth into the high way, and commanded their Pages to come by little and little towards the bridge Sequana. When they were forth they mended their paces, but they could not see any body, so for that they would not lose the way, they alighted, till such time as the carefull and amorous Apollo, purposing anew to salute the Morning hastened him forwards in his course. At this time the three valiant friends, being mounted on their light horse, took the trace of them that had passed: But for that the country was so full of trees, halfe the day was past and they had no newes of them, till they were tolde by a wood maker, that they were passed directly vnto the house of peasure, whether as the king that morning had gone to recreate himselfe. Almost deuining howe it should be, they went vppward into the field, till the bowcr of two: then they saw a faire Tent armed in the midst of the field, nigh vnto the way that they passed to the house and there staid certaine Chariots that seemed to be full of Ladies.

The Princes stayed, and the Tartarian requested them that they would let him alone to goe into the field, and that they would carrie for him there. For to giue him content the two friends did graunt it, who lighted from their horses, and when their Pages came, they commanded Fabio the Dacians page, for that he was most discreet, that he should muffle himselfe, and goe thither, and see what succeeded vnto the Prince of Tartaria. Who with his visor downe and his speare in his hand with a quiet pace, went directly vnto the Tent, at such time as came forth therof a knight armed with yellow armour bozored with blew, mounted on a mightie horse, and in the midst of
his

The first Booke of the third Part

his shield, at the side of a mightie River, there was a Ladie as though she were a writing, with this Poësie which said,

When my griefe I let her know,
In the sand she writes my woe.

The Tartarian receiued great content at the good disposition of the knight, and staying to see what he would do he saw that he went vnto the first Chariot, in the which there was alone three ladies, which seemed the most fairest in all the world, all three appparelled alike in golde tynsell cut vpon blew, and their haire according to the vse of Spaine, with slightly lockes, which graced more their faire faces, and comming vnto them the knight said.

Faire Ladies, the solitarie knight commaundeth mee in his behalfe, I should doe to you his commendations, and for that he hath vnderstood the bzauerie of the Ladies of France, and how renowned they are in the world, hee geseth there will bee knights desirous to shewe their forces in their seruice. From this time I desie them in the name of your beauties, maintaining that you alone deserve the names of faire and beautifull, and to bee beloued aboue all, and I will runne three Speares with euerie one of them, on condition that he who falleth shall lose his horse and shield, and there to leaue his name, and if vnto him it chanceth otherwise, that faire Went shall be the reward of his victorie. And I with the same launces doe desie all knights, with the condition aforesaid, that my passions is more iust than any that hath suffered by loue, my lady being the sole occasion, shee and no other deserving to be lady and Distresse of my thoughts.

It caused the ladies to laugh at that which those two knights would defend: but the answer they remitted to the Duke of Soma, for that hee and all the other Dukes
and

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

and knights that were at the Jutte, came for the loue of the Princesse and the king, who at that time were arrived. The Duke gaue them thanks saying: of truth sir knight, the lady whom this solitarie gallant doth serue, seemeth to be most faire according to his opinion. Yet notwithstanding neither of them shall lacke those that will answere them.

Without any reply or answering, he in the yellow armour boze downe his launce, and put himselfe in place whereas he and they in the Chariots might see the Jutts. When might they see come forth the solitarie knight armed in silver armour full of red listes, and in the midst of his shield a field painted full of sweet flowers, and he lying in the midst amongst them, with this Poë.

I doe liue alone content,
In this pleasant languishment.

He was mounted on a great and mightie horse of a browne colour, with a gallant semblance, tarrying to see how his companion did, for that he should runne with two and himselfe with other two.

The Duke of Samo went forth to the encounter, but although the Hooze was one of the valiantest in his Countrie: yet at the first encounter he lost the reines out of his hand, at the third the Duke of Soma went to the ground, his saddle all in peeces, with griefe vnto all, for that he was welbeloued. Forthwith in his place entred the valiant Duke of Pera, assailing the one the other, the Duke was out of his saddle. Then the Hooze put himselfe on the one side, that the solitarie knight might enter, who entred with a great grace forcing his horse, till such time as there went two knights to the encounter, and the like happened vnto them as did vnto the rest.

The

The first Booke of the third Part

The cunning Horse that first did passe, was making himselfe ready, tarrying to see who would come forth, then entred into the field the curteous Andronio, Prince of Tartaria, mounted on his light horse with the armour which the wise man had sent him, which was all gilt, and thereon placed many Serpents of curious worke, and on his shield, which was of the same colour of his armour, and thereon M. of colour red, with this Verse.

Since I am chanced into deaths fatall lot,
I like my chance if so my Loue be got.

All the Ladies and knightes first their eyes on him, in seeing his gallant shape, who passing before the chariot, made his horse kneele downe, with so gallant a grace that y^e most did affect him, but none more regarded him than the Princesse of Holland Grisanea, who by seeing him, yielded in such sort, that she began to be angry with her selfe, for that she was so bold to speake evil of Loue the night past. Where quickly she made her wth thereof, for turning vnto the Ladies she said. Let vs haue good hope in this knight, that will better defend our beautie than those that are past: with the affection wherewith she spoke it, it did plainly appeare that it did come from her heart, and therewith the braue French Lady said: I pray God Lady cousin, that the force of the knight of the Serpents bee alone to make free the passage, and not to leaue some of vs without libertie.

The Hollandesse did well vnderstand her meaning: but she dissembled, and answered cleane contrarie to the matter, saying: I pray God that he be sufficient to cause them to surrender their armour vnto our guarders. They had made their defiance, & with swift running of their horses they came the one against the other, and meeting in the midst of the way, they gaue such an encounter, that it seemed they had pearced one an other thorough. The Horse

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

lost his right stirrop, and in firming of his seate, because he would not fall, he made a soule wauering, which was seene of all, but purposing to make amendes for the same, he took another great speare, and went against the Tartare, and encountred him with so great force, that the viced Boze, lost his Saddle, and the Tartare his reines, which was the occasion that his horse carried him verye nigh vnto the Chariot, but in recovering them, hee made him returne, and did a thousand gallant trickes with him, al the which were pleasing actions to the heart of the faire Grisanea, who could not chuse but say. This knight faire Cousin, seemeth much like vnto him that yesterday had the praise of the Justes. The like thought the other two Ladies: but the Dutches broke it off saying, it cannot be he for that he would not come without his companion, neither durst any of them come for the death of the Phrigian Prince.

The proceeding forwards on their talke was cut off by the cruell Justes of the two knights, for in the middest of their carriere they met in such sort, that it seemed it had bin two great rocks, the one passed by the other wth great vprightnes, the one being greatly amazed at the strength of the other: and taking other great Launces, with all the swiftnes possible, they encountred, and shiuered them all in peeces, which whirling in the ayre declared the force of their rigozeus armes. The Boze did a little stagger on the one side, but not in such sort to bee accompted notable, neither so but they did all praise his great force: but that of the Tartare was iudged in fauour amongst the Ladies, and amongst the knights with enuy, not onely vnto them but also to proud Mars if hee were there, for giuing them so great force. They returned with the great furie wheres with they were indued, and encountred in the middest of their course, shiuering their Launces in small peeces, which was the occasion that it pearced not their armour, but so oppressed the knights, that the horse of the Tartare

Z

boze

The first Booke of the third Part

boze backward thre or foure paces, and settled his buttocks on the ground, which made them that were present to thinke that all would haue come together: but he seeing how much it stood him in hand, and moze there then in any other occasion, it was needful for him to profit himselfe of his strength, and to hold him fast vnto the necke of his inchaunted horse, and pricked him so stiffe, that hee made him to leap forwards, which caused the Ladies to be verie desirous to know who he was. The curteous Andronio returned, and thought that the encounter had bene of small effect, wherewith he saw that the fierce Boze lay along on the ground, and by him his horse that did beare him company, who with the force of that strong encounter, the one remained without life, the other without sence: Wherewith verie lightly hee leapt on foote, and went vnto the yeelded pray, and it grieved him for that he thought he had bin dead he lay in such sort: and when hee came vnto him, hee tooke his helme from his head to giue him freshe ayre, so that he might come vnto himselfe, who at his return seeing himself in the power of his enemye, that willed him to yeeld, he answered: Valiant knight it is not fit, that you should demaund moze than the honoꝝ which you haue got in ouerthrowing me in this sort, it had bene greater content vnto me, that you had ended my life, and sustaining my honoꝝ, then to leaue me so voide thereof. The Louer Andronio was greatly affected vnto the discret words of his aduersarie, and without any moze wordes, hee gaue him his hand and helped him from the ground, and craued pardon of him for the death of his horse.

High vnto them there was a French Knight, who was ashamed that hee was ouerthrowen by the Boze, who hauing no respect vnto reason, but vnto the passion which guided him, said: you haue not to receiue any grieve valiant knight of the Serpentes for this, for that it was first ordained, that he who lost his saddle should lose therewith his horse, and it is rather a vantage, and that hee should
not

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

not inioy that which an other inioyeth not. The Tartare could not but receiue grieve, to see the signes of sorrow that he made to receiue that shame, which the French knight had vsed toward him: but Fortune did quickly giue him his hands full of occasion for to be reuenged on all.

But the Horse vsing the licence and libertie which the Tartare gaue him, without taking leaue of any, tooke an other horse out of the Tent, and with his companion entered the same forrest, and left the tent for the knight to do therewith his pleasure: who for that hee had surrendred it vnto the Ladies of the Chariot, on foote as hee was, for that they sent to call him, he went vnto them. And vsing great curtesie, wherof they were woorthy, comforting his troubled best: he said vnto them. Faire Ladies although I doe not know for whom I haue done this little seruice, yet I come to aske my discharge, with offer of my good will, for any other matter of great importance.

Thanks vnto you gentle knight (answered the affected Hollandesse) for this newe offer, with securitie that for so much as you imploy your selfe in shewing your strength in the fauour of Ladies, there could not fall better occasion than is this wee haue seene, to free this passage, els we should haue bene driuen to seeke others.

The louing French Knights did not let to blush at the words which the Princess said: but dissembling they made no answer, for to heare what Grifalinda did say vnto the knight.

Woorthy knight of the Serpents, said she, you shal consent these Ladies and me in declaring vnto vs your name, and who you are.

With a gallant grace (answered the heroycall Tartare) I would willingly faire Ladies that as fortune hath put into my hands, life, for to imploy it for your seruice, that it woulde giue mee strength and power for to doe a thing so iust, as to leaue my name in your hands.

The first Booke of the third Part

But fortune enuying the glory that should follow hereof, forbiddeth me by a former charge to tell who I am: for that in telling thereof, it will bee more costly to my fame than vnto my life. The Holland Lady, with great content would haue answered him to the purpose (but greatly fearing that her cosin had been she that had subiected his will) yet seeing that it was impossible to get any more of the Dore, she said vnto him: of truth Sir knight it seemeth well by the companie that you bring with you vpon your armour, that you conforme your selfe well with them, for they haue not vsed the crueltie as you haue done with those knights in taking from them their honoꝝ, & yet will not tell be who you are. Faire Mistresse answered the amorous youth, my small aduenture hath been the forger of this deuice: but I doe giue you my word, that within thre daies (with another deuice that shall not be we so much rigor) to tell my name and who I am, or els to send you word thereof, if I cannot be the messenger. By your word Sir knight, said the Spaniard Lady, wee remaine sure it will be so. Assuredly (answered the amorous Tartare) that with earnest truth I speake it, and first my life shall faile me, ere I breake my word, besides I wil leaue for a pawning one of my weapons. And so with a soueraign gallantnes, he tooke out his dagger (which the great wise man Gelasio had sent him with the armour) and kneeling downe he put it in the handes of the Princesse of Holand, and with it his heart more amorous then euer any knight of his Countie, and said: With this faire Lady it shalbe Justice in you to take reuengement, if I faile in that I haue promised.

It were not amisse Cousin Grisanea (said the amorous French Lady) seeing with what affection you haue taken that dagger, that hee which hath giuen you a gift, should carrie in the place thereof an other from vs, being bound thereunto. The faire Dutches in the behalf of the Dore, did helpe to take a rich Jewell from the neck of the Princesse

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

cesse Grisanea, and with a gallaunt grace said vnto him: Sir Knight, weare this for a remembzaunce of your promise, and assure ye that on your Knighthood we expect the performance. I remaine bound (faire Ladies, sayd the Prince) for this great fauour, and on a Knights word I will keepe my word: so mounting his horse, hee returned into the thickest of the Forrest, leauing the Ladies praying his discretion and valor. Grisanea could not hyde her ioy, but sportiuelly thus began: I am prouided Ladies of an armed Tent and a Dagger, what hinders me now to be a souldier? So pulling the dagger out of the rich sheath, the pictures of a knight and a Ladie, with certaine Letters were grauen thereon, which the Dutchesse of Sauoy thus read.

Grisanea Princesse of Holland, true Owner of
the mightie Tartarian Andronio.

Indeed said the French Princesse, I see now Cossin you are a souldier, though dissemblingly you yesterday denied your Captain Cupid: for neuer would so wortby a knight haue grauen your picture on his dagger without your consent. I shal hardly be beloued said the Holland princesse, but I protest I neuer heard the name, nor spake with the knight befoze: neither do I beloeue hee is a Tartarian, my Louer (to be plaine with ye) I pray God he proue. At this the other ladies laughed, and she to make them moze merrie, confessed she was Loues captine. So (hauing the rich Tent brought after them) they passed towards the House of pleasure, nigh which by Sunne set they had attained: where a while wee will leaue them to tell you of the discontented King of Cyprus.

At the Triumphs in Paris, among manie that Toris-
mundo overthrew, the proud King of Cyprus was one,
who left the place, with purpose to be reuenged: for as I

The first Booke of the third Part

told ye before he earnestly loued Orofia Duches of Sauoy. And for that occasion neuer fitted him to declare his loue vnto her, he determined to steale her away, being boldned by his great force, and the strength of foure most valiant Giants that he brought with him, and a cousin of his that was the knight at the Passage, and ambushing the rest of his Companie nigh vnto the House of pleasure whether the Ladies went.

These were these that the mighty Andronio ouerthrew, who intending reuenge, ioyned with the Giants and ambushed knights: and this was the noyse that the Princes followed to the fresh and greene field, where the Tartarian requested that hee might cleere the passage for the Ladies: and hauing ended so greatly to his honoz, being ioyfull of that rich iewel, he returned vnto the knights, and gaue them knowledge of all that had succeded, which delighted them verie much, by reason of their friendship confirmed with the Tartarian. So he alighted to rest hymselfe, and tarried til it was night, that they might all three goe together to the house.

The faire Mone had scarce begun to impart her light receiued of the Sunne, when these three Friends rid towards the house of pleasure: yet being vncertaine of the way, they wandred till it was almost midnight, and then came into a mightie great field, where they beheld traveling a verie faire Chariot, and before it two most furious Giants, armed with strong plates of Steele, & in the midst two knights, who seemed to be of great strength and after the Chariot other two mightie Giants, mounted on light horses, with fearful iauelins in their hands. When they came nigher vnto them, they heard that those which were within the Chariot made great lamentation, wherby it appeared they were forced.

The enterprize was difficult, yet they determined to succour them, and to incourage them thereto, the Dacian sayd: *Worthy and valiaunt Friends, now is the time to*
shew

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

shew the courage of your hearts, in attempting so doubtfull an enterprize: do you two assaile those that are before, and I will proue my fortune with those Giants behinde. On this they agreed, and the Dacian was the first y^e approached with his furious horse: at the noyse whereof the two Giants turned about, and seeing him alone, they thought him a very feole, and one of them onely went against him, whom the Prince in the encounter ouerthrew dead to the ground. By this the two valiant Lovers had entered battell with the other foure, with such a noyse as if there had been an host of Knights. The Dacian heard this furie, being in combat with the other Giant, & considering what need his Friends had of helpe, hee hastened the battell, giuing the giant such a blow vpon the helme, that he toke his sense from him: & thinking he had been dead, he entered like a Lion amongst the Giants and Knights, saying: Upon them stout and valiant Knights, for they are vile people, and too few to withstand our forces. What frenoly voice was heard as well of y^e two princes, as of the Ladies that were in the Chariot, who iudged them to bee their louers, according vnto the Knighthood they shewed. At this time the Giant which the Dacian ouerthrew, had recovered his heauie salochion, and with mortall furye came to the Tartarian, striking him such a wonderfull blow, that he made him fall on his horse necke, voyding blood at his nose and eares. Then passing forwards, hee came vnto the two Moyses, & said: Away with the ladies you like, while my fellows keepe these diuelish Knights busied. So the king of Cyprus, his Cousin and the Giant, went vnto the Chariot, and toke each of them a ladie, lamenting could not auaille them. Yet in this hast the king of Cyprus toke not his beloued Dutches, but the princeesse of France, with whom like an Eagle spurring his furious horse, he went directly towards the sea side. The mighty Giant toke for his lot, her whom Apollo would haue chosen for himselfe, for with him he carried the beauteous
prince

The first Booke of the third Part

princesse of Holland, and his Cousin the faire Orosia: at whose strikes the Tartar recouering his sense, followed the Giant as fast as his horse could runne, thozough a bushie way vnto a great plain, where he ouertooke him two howers befoze day, and ere the Giant could set down the Ladie, he smit him so rash a blow, that the princesse was in perill to be troden vnder the horse fete, and the Giant remained without sense. Andronio gaue a second blowe that wounded the Giant in the necke, which caused hym to come to himselfe, and like an infernall furie with his dreadfull saluacion he came against the Tartar, and both together stroke such blowes vpon their helmes, that they quickly made shew of their great force. The noyse was such, that it caused the trembling Ladie to come the sooner to her selfe: and beholding the battell, shee perceiued the Knight fought for her libertie against that monstrous Giant, wherfoze on her knees she desired the giuer of strength to strengthen him. When the Tartarian saw the pearly teares distill from her sun-bright eyes, with the poynt of his sword hee went against the furious Giant, who wyth his saluacion aloft came towards him, but by reason of the swiftnes of his horse, he thrust his sword into the Giants bodie, and drawing it backe drew swyth his life withall, the Giant falling to the ground with so fearfull a crie, that the princesse trembled, though she were freed by the Giants death. With no smal ioy the prince alighted & comforted her, when he beheld it was his beloued Ladie, and pulling off his helme, he discovered his face, beeing high coloured with the heate of the battell. No lesse ioyful was the faire princesse, in seeing him so well proportioned a Knight: who when he came vnto her, knelled downe & said. Receiue faire princesse this smal seruice, with more intire good wil than my tongue can expresse. When answered the affected Ladie: Valiant Knight, so much haue ye done, that I can no way reward ye but by publishing your force, which is the mightiest that I haue seene: & for that

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

I should craue, tell mee your name, and withall carrie me where the Quene my Mother is, whom I beleue remaineth sorrowfull for my absence. Adam (answered the ioyfull Tartar) I haue no will but to accomplish your will, and receiue great ioy that you wil imploy me in any thing. I am Andronio the Prince of Tartarie: and in telling you this, I doe discharge my promise to you yesterday, when I left my dagger in pawne, and receiued this rich iewel in place thereof: which because it hath been on that faire necke, added abilitie to my weake strength, and boldens me to request ye that I may wear it as your knight, in whose name I wil execute all my doings. The Lady was verie ioyous in seeing him she loued to bee the knight that succoured her, & said: I craue pardon worthie prince, in that I haue not intreated you according to your desert: but I am excusable, by reason I knew you not. All is satisfied said the Prince, if you accept me into your seruice. You aske quicke payment (replied the Princesse) but lest you should condemne me of ingratitude, let it be according to your wish. This ioyfull Youth did perforce kisse her hands, washing them with teares through the content he receiued: which nothing grieued the Princesse, when she saw with what affection he did it, accomplishing her self happy, to be beloued of such a prince. The which this courageous Youth perceiuing, and incited by their solitarie being, he said vnto her halfe trembling. Faire princesse, after all this happines it would grieue me, if Fortune (enuying my good) should tread downe my glorie, and bestow it on another: you might if you please (time and place so fitting) assure mee of happines, and rid mee of all doubt. Your speech is strange to mee said the bearded princesse, to my reason it seemeth conuenient, being intertained with this gentlenes, you should content your selfe. Nothing is moze certaine faire Ladie (answered this fearefull Youth) than the curtesie which you already haue shewen me in receiuing me for the knight of your seruice, is sufficient

The first Booke of the third Part

cient reward for more than all my worth, yet to assure my good, make me happy by a husbands name. Sir knight said she you are too forward, and if I thought any misbehaviour in me caused this boldness in you, I would let out that lightness with my life. Whise words and the sharpness of their delivrie, so wounded the Tartarian, that he fell senseless on the princesses lap: who seeing him in y^e case, was readie to beare him companie, but with teares & cryings she recalled him, and he reviving, said. Ah haplesse Tartarie, twice bereft of thy natural Lord, who by disdaine in France is seized on by death. Oh my valiant and new friends, no more shall I contentedly rejoyce with you. And you (cruell Ladie) may triumph in his death, that hath defended your honor and life. Ah worthe knight said she, God knowes what sorrow I suffer, for that with my honour I cannot worke your content, there being such difference in our Religions: yet rather than you shal thus afflict your self, sweare to me to be baptisde, and I do yeld my whole estate into your hands. Expressse I cannot the Tartarians ioy: he vowed to be baptisde, possesse his wish, and with his betrothed wife rid toward the house of pleasure, and on the way she told him, how the Giants first set upon them by the rivers side.

We will leaue these Lovers on the way, and declare the end of the battell betwene the two princes & the Giants, who held them so hard, that they could not prevent the carrying away of the Ladie. The valiant Dacian to conclude the battell, stroke the Giant such a blow, that it tooke away his sight: and at that time had the Spaniard made his aduersarie stop on his saddle bow. And beeing nigh the Dacian, he stroke him so surely on the buckling of the helme, that head and all fell to the ground, and then with two blowes they both together dispatched the other Giant. Then without any stay they folowed those that carried away the Princesses, and overtaking them at the edge of the mountaine, they cried: False Knights, leaue your

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

your pray, the same will cost you your heads. And there-
withall they smit two such blowes, that they made them
leauē their Ladies: and so, with there was betwene
them a sightly battell, so that the Moyses were the valio-
antest in all their Countrey. And so that the Spaniard
did make battell befoze his Ladie, (so at y time he knew
her) he made so great hast, that he ouerthrew him at hys
feet, and lighting from his horse, he cut off his head, at the
same instant that the Dacian had giuen a mortall wound
vnto his Moze, ouerthrowing him with a great fall vpon
his backe, and by and by hee yelded vnto the ghost. These
two perfect Friends when they saw their work done, went
vnto the Ladies with their helmes off. The French prin-
cesse knowing her welbeloued Louer, receiued him with
the greatest show of affection that she could, saying: Oh
Flower of Knighthood, how shall I repay you thys great
good: It is but little faire Princeesse (said he) that we haue
done for your libertie, your worthinesse and beantie dooth
deserue it. And none being by but the prince and the Du-
chesse whom they might trust, they vsed very amorous con-
uersation, till such time as the absence of the Princeesse of
Holland did hasten them to depart. And by reason it was
not as yet day, they lost their way, and found themselves
in the morning nigh vnto the Fountaine, where y Prince
did leauē his greene armour, by counsell of the Damsell
that the Wiseman sent: and therewith declared hee vnto
them all his past estate, and who he was, whereof the
was verie ioyfull. There they ioyned hands, to which con-
tract the Tartarian and Grisanea came, who were recei-
ued with exceeding ioy, the French Princeesse especiallze
reioycing, to see her Cousin Grisanea so quickly chaun-
ged.

The worthy Spanish Prince pulled off his armour,
and laid it aside: being unarmed, he seemed one of the fai-
rest personages in all the world, which was a new snare,
to cause the gentle French Ladie the moze to loue hym.

The first Booke of the third Part

And there with they began to provide for their departure, when on a sodaine they saw come forth of the thickest of the Forrest a furious Dragon, which amazed these three princes: yet fearlessly they attempted to defend their Ladies. But the Monster left them, and went directly to the shield with the faire portraiture, that the Tartarian had given the prince of Spaine, which he took betwene her sharpe nayles, and gave so terrible a crie, that made them all to fall to the ground: and rising up, they could not see the Dragon, but a pillar standing by the chrystalline fountaine of Forgetfulness, having an inscription thereon, which the Dacian Wouthread, as followeth.

From this day forwards the water of Merlins Fountaine is forbidden to anie, till such time as the Sonne of the barbard Lionesse, in companie of the Flower of the Spanish Nation, the one and the other doubtfull, boldened by the keeper, do take out of the deepest of the Fountaine the faire shield; the victorie confirmed in the presence of the amorous Hircan Serpent. But thou Knight that art desirous before that time to attempt this Adventure, leaue thy desire, els death shall be the reward of thy boldnes.

All were wondrously amazed at this new Adventure, and could not imagine to whom the entry should be granted: yet were they ioyfull that befoze the water was denied, they had vnderstood the effect. And for that it was late, and the princesses desired to returne to the house of pleasure, they took their way thetherwards, with great consent vnto the Dacian, to see how wel it succeeded with his Friends, he iudging them now not alone for Louers, but as men secured from Loues tempests: having a kinde of ennue at their happie estate. With this imagination and consideration of the manie troubles hee had suffered, hee kept no companie with the princesses: and that which worst and most greued him at the heart was, that hee
never

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

neuer receiued any rest: but rather iudged that he should begin a new to suffer greater.

The French Princesse seeing him ride so solitarily began thus sportiue ly to talke. I see my handmaide Alcisa founded your minde my Lord of Dacia: for shee told mee, you had forgot all loue sicke passions, and would not bee so idle busied as to intend amorous busines. Madam said he, you might rather say I am now idle, for I protest wth I did loue (as once I confesse, I knew that madnes) neuer was any so busied as I, night, day, in company, alone, I was so troubled that I account no trauell like it, and I hope neuer againe to trauel with that burden. A Sir said Orofia, if ye haue loued there is no doubt yee may againe, doe not disdaine a louers name: see by example the sayre Grisanea, that was yester day free, and she forsooth would none of loue, singing, saying all was against loue, and now you see she tunes her musique in another key. And so may he said the Holland Princesse, but belike he scorneth the French beautie, and meanes to seeke farther for more faire. So faire and so courteous said hee, haue I seld seene, and if I euer affect, I wish it may be here. In this swete conuersation they trauelled, when at the first hower, they saw much armed people traueiling the way agallop, right towards the Sea sides. They imagined whether they went, commaunding their Pages to goe and aduise them of the libertie of the Ladies, that the knightes might bee quieted. So they prosecuted their way till they came berie nigh the house, whereas they met the King, and all those mightie Princes which went to seek them. It is not to be expressed to auoide tediousnes, what ioy the King and all those knights had, and the more when they knew who they were, and what they had done before for the honor of France. The same day at the request of the Prince of Dacia, knowing the valor of the Spaniard, hee did so much that the King in publike did toine their hands, who in secret had toynded their hearts. The Nephew of Fran-

The first Booke of the third Part

conio reioyced to giue his daughter vnto the discent of Ricardo the Catholike King of Gades, and of the Kings that succeeded in Spaine. A happie coniunction, seeing that from thence must proceed fruite that will make the world to wonder. In like manner the Quene of Holland received content to giue her daughter, to him who with good diligence did procure befoze her was a louer the reward of a Louer. All the Court did reioyce, and the free Prince of Dacia sustained his libertie. Also the gallant French Ladies consecrating their fame to immortallitie. The courteous Andronio would not depart with his louing spouse, but tarried till she and the Princesse of France were both brought to bed. And when their times came, they were deliuered of two Sonnes the most fairest in all the world. That of the French Lady was called Grisaliano at the request of his faire mother. That of the mightie Tartare, was named Andronisio. These yong and new Princes caused great reioycing in the Court, and the king shewed it by the gifts which he gaue. The Dacian did passe his free time with his welbeloued friends, till on a day at the taking vp of the tables, there entred the Damsell which the wise man had sent him so many times, who making great curtesie vnto the king, she went vnto the prince Heleno, and gaue him a letter from the wise Lirgandeo, who did read it aloud, being as followeth.

REmembryng and acknowledging wherein I was bound so long time past vnto your father and you valiant prince, studying how much I may shewe it for your conduct. I haue found it couenient that you leaue the dainties of the Court, and return to the auncient trauels: now void from your warlike mind, and with the armor which my damsel shall giue thee, thou shalt depart forthwith, aduising the Tartare thy friend, that the princesse in recovering strength to sustaine so long a iorney, hee returne thether, wheras with great necessitie he is desired:

and

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

and to haue me in the number of his frends, for I wil deal faithfully in his affaires: he who gonerne th the world be thy keeper, & giue thee forces to suffer that which is taryng for thee.

In concluding the reading of the letter, the Damsell said, that forthwith he should arme himself, for that it was conuenient with all speed he should go forth of France, whereas so quickly free hearts do humble their necks vnto the amorous yoke of Cupid, and therewith she tooke out a russet armour, and began to help to arme him, and gaue him a shield, with the ancient deuice of Cupid with two faces. They al receiued content to see the riches of that armour, but not without grieve to consider that the owner should so long be absent: so he tooke his leaue of them all, not admitting the company of any, he embraced his good frends, not without some sorrow, but especially to the Ladies. So the valiant Heleno went out of France, leauing them to talke of his great strength for many yeeres: and when he came to the Sea side, he found his enchanted boate, who ingulsted him into the sea in such sort, that hee lost the sight not onely of them that did beare him companie to the Sea side, but also of the most highest rockes that were there. All the knights returned vnto Paris, much lamenting the absence of y Prince, although it was a ioy to see the bzinging vp of the yong Princes, euerie day more and more increasing in beautie, till the tyme came that the Tartare with his faire wife & yong Donne did imbarke themselves in a wel appointed ship, to saile towards Tartaria, at whose departure the faire Grisalinda was left solitarie, who with motherly affection did bzing vp her Donne the Prince and her cousin till they came to the age of fourtene yeeres, who in the bignes of their bodies and gallant disposition seemed to bee of many more yeares: where as wee will leaue them, for to tell of that which hapned to the Tartare trauellling to his Country.

What

The first Booke of the third Part

What hapned to the mighty Tartare Andronio at the Sea, with a ship of Rouers, of the ayde and succour that Roficleer and his companions gaue him. Chap. 10.



Dowards Tartaria went this courteous Andronio, with his welbeloued Princesse Grisanea, verie ioyfull for the good chance which fortune had giuen him in accomplishing his desires with so little grieue vnto his minde. In the same degree of ioy was the faire Grisanea, dzyuing away the painful boyage with the presence of her welbeloued Andronio, and the faire Prince Andronio, from whom the amorous Lady did neuer depart, accompting that life to be death with the absence at least of one of them. So they trauelled with prosperous gales, Aeolus shewing to them greatt frendship, til the tenth day of their navigation, they beheld two ships with full sailes bearing their course: by and by the worthy Tartarian began to put in order his knightes in the most dangerous parts of his ship, because they should not come vpon them vnprovided, notwithstanding many teares of the faire Princesse Grisanea, who began to complaine on fortunes mutabilitie. On the contrarie her Rouer went vpon the fore-castle of the ship, being armed with his strong and shining armour, and at his going forth met with his beloued Lady, who greatly increased the courageous minde where with he was indued. At this time the two great ships were come so nigh that they might vicerne who came to them, for at the ships side appeared a furious fierce and vnseemely knight, that lacked little to be a Giant, who with many moe other knightes beganne with great noise to bid them yeeld. But the Tartarian seeing that with such people, it was not boote to reason, answered them with their swords in their handes, and caused his ship to be grappled, with that of the great knight,

with

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

with more courage then if he had the victorie of that battaile secure; so there began betweene these two, one of the most rigorous battels that euer was seene at sea. For that the Rouer was one of the most valiantest amongst the Pagans. At their meeting they settled two so myghtie blows, that both of them with the grieve, gaue testimonie of the force of his enemye. Our valiant Andronio, redoubled an other on the deformed knight, which lighted on a Target of fine Steele which he had for a shield, which being done with great cholar, he saw him to step backe thre or foure paces, wherewith he entred after him, thinking all had been ended: but in a moment before hee could enter into the Ship of his contrarie, he was with a sharp assalt disturbed by the great knight, who strooke him vpon the shield, and although it could not enter by reason of the Magicall temper, yet he droue it to his helme, with so great force that it made him not onely to lose that which he had got, but all his standing by the force of the blowe, wherewith began such a battaile that it seemed to bee of many more knights. Those on the Tartares side did well defend themselves, and offended their contraries: but when the second ship came and boorded her on the other side, it was cause that the courteous Andronio left the battell with the other, and supplied the greater necessity, and did great wonders, for whereas he went hee made a broad way amongst them that were so bolde in troopes to enter into his ship, trusting in their strengths because they were so many. There he found the lacke of help that his good frends had done for him, and was assured if they had bene there, those people had been but a few to haue withstood their forces. Likewise it grieved him to see the weeping Princesse with her Sonne in her armes from vnder hatches, beholding the bloudy battel, committing all her charge vnto the high maker of all the world, and that hee would not permit the losse of her husband before he were Baptized, which he had so earnestly promised to perform.

The first Booke of the third Part

At that time the afflicted Lady did see, that they entred into the ship in three other places, that she could scarce suffer so horrible a spectacle, and the more when as the great knight with a light leape entred the ship, crying victorie, with the losse of many liues, whome hee ouerthrew with his sencelesse blowes, all which went vnto the heart of the fearefull Princeesse. At the bustling and noise which the Pagan made, the curteous Tartare returned that way which he came with his sword coloured in blood, and assailing him said, Oh unsatiable furie of Hircania, when wilt thou conclude thy vntamed furie? And with his sword he stroke him such a blow vpon the helme that glanced to the gorget in such sort that it made a troublesome wound, whereat issued much blood, which was the occasion that the Moore returned (with much more furie than the Lion on the yielded prey) and stroke the Tartare such an ouerthwart blow on the waste, that he made him to fall vpon a banke in the Shippe, but as quicke as thought hee rose vp againe, and returned on his enemy, and defended that part: but in the other parts, there were so many more than he had, that his knightes beganne to bee dismayd and to retire to the Castle on the poore, and defended the Cabbin whereas the Lady was, who gaue such shrieks that they reached vnto the heauens. And he who neuer failed them that called vpon him in their necessitie, did ayde them: In that there came directly vnto them the inchaunted ship of the three couragious Princes, Rosicleer, Meridian and the heroycke Trojan, that was going vnto the kingdome of Lacedemonia: who with the stormes at Sea came that way, whereas the battaile was. And seeing the sea stained with blood, and that there were two ships to one, they determined to helpe the weakest, and to do that which they were bound by order of knighthood. So they grapled their ship with that of the Tartare, and could not imagine, who that valiant knight should be, that made such defiance against so many: and for that they would not delaye they

lues

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

succour, embracing their shields with their swords in their hands, they leaped in, and ouerthrew thre that they met at the entrie. The warlike Greeke went directly where as the great knight was in battaille, and without stay (for that he imagined he was a Rouer) he gaue him so strong a blow, that he almost deuided him in two parts, and ouerthrew him at the fete of his enemy, leauing him greatly amazed to see so furious a blowe. And hauing no more time, seeing so good succour and the victorie at hand, he couragiously set vpon his enemies, hauing by him the pillar of Knighthood, that would not let him strike a blow, he assailed them so fast on euery side. The other two princes were not idle with the rest, but seemed as lightning, striking on both sides to the grieve of those miserable knights, vpon whome came the iust iudgement of God, conformable vnto the life they led, and the great iniuries which they had done both by sea and land without any difference of nations, paying now all that they enioyed, for they dealt with knights that neuer strooke blowe but they killed or maymed an enemy. And the Grecian Mars being affected vnto the valiantnes of the Tartare, said: Vpon them stout knight, for they are before your force vile and base people. And therewith with a gallant semblance, he threw his shield on his shoulder with his sword in his hand (that of Quene Iulia was not better) and began to wield his furious body so hastily, that within one houer they found not one with whom to fight, although there entered into the ship more then two hundred knights, all chosen men: but with the help of their friends, did he and the Tartare enter into the ships of their contraries, and did in strife maine other wonderful maruels, till such time as they saw they could make no resistance, both the one and the other ship did yeld, and craued mercy for their liues of the two valiant warriors: who vsing their accustomed clemencie, and that which is natural vnto worthy victors, they receiued them prisoners.

The first Booke of the third Part

So leauing the Ships with good watch and ward, hee returned vnto their owne, and met at the entrie their two good frends : whereas when they were together, the valiant Tartare pulled off his helme and went directly vnto the Greeke and said. Warlike knight, let my fortune be so good that I may know whom I may giue honoz to, as the restorer of my life, in knowing who you are, and the like of your companions. Gentle knight (answered the beloued of Oliuia) we are of the countrie of Greece, and knights of so little fame, that if wee should tell you, wee should not thereby be knowen. Oh mightie Iupiter, with a great voice said the curteous Andronio, is it possible that I haue so great good in my Ship : and that those who hath ventured their liues for my libertie, are of that happy Country where the Sepulcher of my vnfortunate Cousin Zoylo is : worthy knight do not deny me your names, for you shall declare it vnto him that is the greatest friend to all Grecia. I am the happy Andronio in that I haue met with you, and Cousin to Zoylo a deare friend to the Grecian Princes, and now by my fortune or better to say misfortune, for lacke of such a Cousin, I am come to bee King of the people of Tartary. And now since I haue told you my name and who I am, and with what security you may tel me yours : doe not deny it me, for I doe imagine that vnder these armours goeth some of the Princes of Grecia. The heroycke Rosicleer pulled off his helme and discovered his faire face, being bound by the good reasons of the Tartare, yet doubtfull of that he told touching the death of his beloued friend Zoylo : and he said, valiant Andronio, it shall be an vniust part to hide who wee are vnto him that so plainly hath giuen vs to vnderstand of his doings and who he is, we are bound to doe the like, so that in knowing you shall receiue content. I will tell you, This knight (pointing to Meridian) is Meridian Prince of the Scythians. And this knight is the warlike Oristides the Trojan, and I am one of those princes of Grecia,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

to whom you are indebted so much as you say . I am called Rosicleer, and by an other name the Knight of Cupid, the greatest friend to the Tartar Zoylo, and you haue made me not a little maruell in saying that he is dead.

With strange content went the curteous Andronio to kisse the hands of the warlike Greeke: who not admitting such costly curtesie, raysed him from the ground, remaining imbraced of the Tartare: who with the ioy hee receiued thereof, said: I will not ventrous Prince y the knowing of you be without giving part of the ioy vnto my welbeloued Princesse. Who hauing heard that y Grecian prince was there, came forth and humbled her selfe to Rosicleer, giuing him and his Companions hearty thanks for their ayd. He graciously entertained her, yet was hee verie impatient to heare of the death of Zoylo, inquiring of Andronio about the circumstances: who hauing tolde them, Rosicleer bowed reuenge, whereto Meridian & Oristides promised their helpe. But the Greeke princes sorrow being perceiued by the Trojan, he altered their communication, and incited them to know of the knights that were prisoners, who was that mightie pyzate: and likewise who faire Grisanea was? Of the last Andronio resolved them, in manner as you haue heard: certefying them beside of the prince Don Heleno, whereat the Greeke did not a little reioyce, for that since they left Tinacria, hee neuer heard of him.

Now touching the Kouer, a Knight that was prisoner and one that seemed a principall in that Crue, sayd: Understand worthy Knights, that the dead Knight and Owner of these ships and diuers other that range this Coast, was the furious Bruncaldo, a great Kouer, and feared of all these Ilands: for that he was Lord of one hereby, although a little one, yet the strongest of them al, for the difficultie of the entrie, hauing at the port one of the strongest Castles in the earth, called the Doubtfull Castle, the Iland also taking name thereof. To keepe which when

The first Booke of the third Part

he goeth abroad, he leaueth two fierce Giants that married his Sisters: and in that Castle he hath manie miserable prisoners. The Princes pittying the estate of the Iland, intended to free it and the prisoners: and in the proceedings were thus aduised by the Knight. The best meanes to take the Iland for Knights, is to haue your ship towed as if she were taken, and to put out at our tops the common Ensigne of victorie, which is a Flag, with the Sunne in a blacke field: for otherwise the entrie will be verie difficult, by reason of a chaine that crosseth from one rocke to another. I being knowen will tell the warders Bruncaldo is in his bed wounded in taking the Prize. Of all wayes this is the surrest, & to this I aduise you, as well for the reuerence I beare to your worthines, as the compassion I haue of manie Knights and Ladies that remain there prisoners.

They all liked his aduice, and caused the Tartarians Knights to enter the two ships, and hang out their Ensigne of victorie, towing the princes ship after them. The next morning they came within sight of the Castle, which was seated vpon a rocke, hauing a waye no broader than for two to passe, cut out of the same rocke. At the entrie it had two towers, in which the Giants lay, and more inward was the lodging of Bruncaldo, gallantly built, with stones of diuers colours: and betwene these three towers was a large paved court, wherein fiftie Knights might combat on horsebacke.

So soone as they had sounded victorie, they were answered from both the towers with excellent instruments, for ioy to receiue their Lord, and to warne them that kept the chaine to open it, which was presently done: whereat the princes greatly reioyced, and thanked the Knight, who (lifting vp his visor) told them on the shore that their lord was sore wounded. With this they landed, ascending by by two and two: first Briano the Knight of the Castle and the valiant Grecian, after them the princeesse and Dam-
sells,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

sells, and so the rest in order. In this sort they ascended the steps, making as if they reioyced in their bootie, till such time as they were in the highest part of the Castle, unsuspected. When they came there, the two deformed giants (unarmed) did receiue them, verie ioyfull that their brother in law was come, although grieued that hee was so sore wounded: neuertheles (said they) wee will present this Ladie to the wife of Bruncaldo. But said the greatest Giant, I had rather deale with him that had so much power to wound my Lord and Brother. Briano answered: He paid his bolones with his life, and lost his Wife (that is this Ladie), vnto whom my Lord commaundeth great honour should be done, for her beautie sake, and to bee in companie with his Wife, till he commeth forth of y ship. The disguised knights receiued great ioy to see with what discretion Briano proceeded in his busines, and esteemed him (as indeed he was) to be a perfect good man, and a iust knight.

The Grecian prince made a signe vnto Oristides and Meridian, that each of them with foure of those knights should (as though they went for some other matter) take the gates of the two towers, while he and the Tartarian with the two Giants & the discrete Briano, went vnto the higher tower, leading the princeesse and her damselfs as if they had been prisoners, to the great contentment of the Giants.

Here might the two couragious princes haue concluded this aduenture without any molestation, but they accounted it base and boyde of Knighthood, to assaile them without armour: therefore they passed forwards with all their companie, till they entered into the great Court, at whose rich workmanship they all wondred. There they saw painted manie ancient pictures, the which did beautifie more that sumptuous Court. There were excellently wrought of Iasper stone two paire of staires, one right against another.

The

The first Booke of the third Part

The princes gazed not at anie thing, least the Gyants should suspect them, who gaped so on the princesses beauty that they put her in great feare with their ugly countenances. When they entred into the hall, which seemed to bee fit for an Emperour, the ceiling being full of gold & stones of rich price. The Wife of Bruncaldo being ther, moved not when she missed her Lord: but (as full of pride as tyrannie) said. I would excuse your comming Woman, so that my husband were unhurt: but as hee was reuenged on your husband, so will I reuenge me on you. And therewith she tooke forth a great bunch of keyes, and gaue the to a woman to carrie the Ladie to prison. The anger was so great that Andronio receiued to see his Ladie thorough feare change colour, that without farther consideration, he pulled the keyes from the woman, and throwing them at Bruncaldos wife, he droue two or three of them into her forehead, and slew her where she sat. This chance much grieued the Grecian, but it could not be remedied, and seeing all was discovered, he put the Ladies behinde him, & drew his sword. The wrathfull Tartarian was determined to assaile the Gyants: who seeing the death of their sister, and how they were betraid, came towards the princes with their sawchions aloft. To whom the Grecian said: Stand false Knightes, for wee are not accustomed to fight with vnarmed men: put on your armour, for the worthie arme that tooke away your brothers life, will also take away yours. Oh vile creatures said the Giant, will you delay my reuenge while I put on armour? I would Mars and all the Gods were before mee, and thou shouldst see I had no need of armour for them, how much lesse then for you? And in saying this, he stroke a blow at the Tartars vnawares, that it was meruaile hee had not cut him in peeces: but he arose againe, brused with the fall he gaue him on his backe, and was striking at the Giant, but the Grecian put the poynt of his sword betwene, and stayed the execution thereof. And for that the Sonne of

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

Trebatio would not haue of them anie vantage, he againe said: take your armour furious beasts, for there with you shall haue enough to doe to deliuer your selues out of our hands. Yet ceased they not to strike, and they with great lightnes auoyded: till one of the Giaunts with a hoarce voyce said. Stay foolish knights, and you shall see me stay longer in arming my self, than in taking away your liues. So they descended the staires, making a great noyse, and at their comming into the Court they met foure or fve of the Tartarians knights and slew them, offering as much to the princes at the gates, who letting slip their blowes entred within them, and with their armed fists seld them to the ground, & wold haue cut off their heads. At which the Grecian came downe (hauing left the Tartarian above to keepe the tower) and would in no case let them be smitten vnarmed, commanding a Page of the Castle to fetch their armour, and in the meane time they came to themselves. And considering they were by two knights ouerthrowne, they blasphemed their Gods, and hasting to arme one another, the eldest said. Carrie a little ye captiue people, and you shall see how deere I will make you buy this treason. When they were armed, shaking their bright sawchions, they came against them all. Rosicleer was a knight of great patience, but the proud words of the Giant had so earnestly angred him, that it made him say thus. For that you shall vnderstand how I esteeme ye, come both ioyntly to me, and you shall finde my deeds differ from my words: and therewith he let flye three or foure blowes aloft, which made them seeke defence for theyr heads. When he saw them looke aside, he gaue the yonger Giant such an ouerthwart blow on his thigh, that hee cut him to the boane: but the other Giant reached hym with the poynt of his sawchion vpon his shoulder, that it made him stop with his hands to the ground. The principall hall was toward the court, so that from thence the Tartarian and his Wife saw the valour of the Grecian:

The first Booke of the third Part

who at this time was more couragious, than if he had fought with one alone knight. The Tartarian being amazed to see his valiantnes, could not chuse but say: Merely it seemeth all the Gods did toyne together at the birth of this invincible Warrior, and put in him more strength than remaineth in them all. A happie country is it y^e eniough such Lords: happie Zoylo, that amongst such friends hath found a sepulcher: and happie Andronio, that hath scene with his eyes, what els he would not haue beleued. Of truth (worthy husband, said Grisanea) I would gladlye some of those knights would helpe the Grecian Prince, not that his valor hath need thereof, but that we should be the sooner rid of these people, for I am not yet free of the feare I receiued. Orissides had no need to be intreated, for with a light leape hee leapt in, & receiued on his shield the second blow that the Giant Tembloso stroke at the Grecian, which made him belw to the ground. As he arose to reuenge it, the Grecian said vnto him: Stand away Orissides, and staine not your sword in so euill blood. And in so saying he gaue a thrust at the furious Tembloso, and returned vnto the other Giant, striking him so mightie a blow vpon the helme, that hee made him almost senselesse. At the same time had the Trojan stroke such a blowe at his hands, that almost he had parted them asunder, which made him giue a fearfull shriek, where with his Brother stroke the Greeke Prince such a blow on the helme, that if Artemidoroës vertue had not been therein, his lyfe had been in great perill. The Giant was nimble, and would not lose any occasion, therefore hee entred, desirous for to strike him another blow: but the Trojan did breake the execution thereof, which gaue the Grecian time to recover himselfe. The other Giant by reason of the first wound Rosicleer gaue him, fell vpon his knees blaspheming his Gods. The Ladies of the Princesse receiued great content to see him fall, and said: It seemeth to vs that one of them both come by little and little to the ground. The
gen.

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

gentle Trovan did verie well heare these words, & went
against the hurt Giant, but comming nigh him, the Gi-
ant with his left hand laid hold on the skirt of his haberge-
on, and drew him within his armes. The Trovan knew
well in what perill he was, and to be moze at libertie, and
the better to helpe himselfe, he let his shield fall from his
arme. The Giant seeing that, so crushed him, that he ve-
rely thought his armour wou'd haue entred into his fl. sh,
his greefe was so much: yet for all that hee did not forget
his dagger, which he thrice stabbed into the Giant, and as
often drew it forth with his blood, and the fourth time he
thrust it in vnder the skirt of his habergion vppwards with
so much force, that the murdering blade came to his heart.
Which caused the Giant with y pangs of death to squeeze
him so strengly, that if it should long haue indured, it had
not been possible but hee should haue been in great perill:
but his breath failing him, he opened his armes, and com-
mitted his soule to the diuell, and his bodie to the senseless
earth the Trovan being so faint and wearie, that he was
forced in great hast to pull off his helme, to take the bene-
fite of the coole ayre, and safe him downe vppon the dead
bodie of the Giant, with great contentment vnto them al.
And being a little refreshd, hee busied his eyes in behold-
ing the battell betwene the invincible Rosicler and the
furious Tembloso: which seemed but then to begin. Yet
the Giant shewed himselfe to be somewhat wearie, by rea-
son of the weight of his strong armour, & the great light-
nes of the Prince: who entring in and out, made him ve-
rie wearie, which was the occasion that the Prince as-
saulted him the ofner, wounding him so on the legs, that
all the Court was stained with his brutall blood. Our va-
liant Grecian seeing his aduersarie began to faint, layd
hold vpon his shield with so great strength, that he pulled
him perforce vnto the ground with so great a fall, that hee
was almost without sense or meaning, and before hee had
any memorie to recover himself, he slept to him & with his

The first Booke of the third Part

left hand pulled off his helme, and cloave his head to the necke. Then he sat down to rest himselfe, and asked the Trojan how he fared: Well said he, though almost out of breath: but let vs meete the Tartarian and his Wife, who are comming to visit vs. With that the faire Princeesse came, and said: Thus farre (worthie Princes) extendeth the courages of women, to the signes of græfe & ioy, as they doe receiue cause by the successe of the battell. I thanke ye faire Princeesse for your ioy, answered the Grecian. But their conference was broke off by the manie embracings which the Tartare vsed to the Grecian, for the frendship which hee had with that unfortunate Zoylo, whom in the face Andronio did much resemble, yet he had more strength than he that was dead. Then searched they Castle, and found the Wiues of the Giants making great lamentation for the death of their husbands. After they had dined, they required Briano and some of the Knights of Tartarie, to goe and release the prisoners. All the seruants and people when they vnderstood the death of the Giants, gaue their obedience vnto the Princes, more reioycing to receiue them for Lords, than those cruell Giants.

Then they demaunded the keyes of the prison of one of the Giants Wiues: who seeing themselves in the power of their enemies, ioynd together with the keyes in their hands at a window that opened vnto the sea, where in desperately they threw themselves, rather than they would liue pittied. It was so high from whence they fell, that ere they came to the water, they were starke dead. That rash deed could not but græue them all, but seeing it might not be remedied, they commaunded that the doores of the prison should be broken open, which was done by the pages of the Princes verie sodainly. They being aduertised what number of prisoners were within the severall dungeons, commaunded them to be brought forth into the Court, as well women as men, and manie children.

Who

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Who when they saw people enter (thinking they were of the Giants sending) they began to say: What butcherly people, more crueler then the furies, will you ease so many deathes, with taking away of our lives: what profite find you in executing your fury on them that cannot make resistance?

Then said Argolio the Page of the Grecian Prince, wee are none of those peruerse people which you thinke: but we are servants vnto certaine knights who haue gyuen you liberty. One could not heare another, the noyse of pleasure was so great made by those miserable Captiues: some referring it to God like good Christians, others thinking that it came from Mahomet. So that there was none but gaue thanks vnto them whome they acknowledged for their Gods.

With infinite ioy and great shewes of contentment came forth all those miserable people, and when they came into the court, and saw the Sunne, they all kneeled on their knees, and gaue thanks vnto God for their libertie, and those venterous knights. They were in all more than thre hundred persons, which caused no small compassion vnto the Princes, who with some pittifull tears did accompany the people. Amongst them ther were some knights and people of respect, principally two women, and thre or foure men, which were together on the one side. The valiant Greeke went downe thether, and with him the other princes with their helmes off. They receiued them with so great noyse, that the one could not heare the other, till they all came and kneeled downe before the Grecian. But they who most reioyced were the companye of the two women, that were seperated on the other side: for one of them and a knight holding their hands together, went a great pace, vnto the Greeke Lord, and with a loud voice said: Oh flower of the Greeke nation, was it not enough that in the beginning of your Knighthood, and my tender yeeres you gaue me a husband, and

The first Booke of the third Part

defended my honestie at the cost of your person. Speake vnto me Prince of Grecia, for I am that Linerua your better of life and honoz, I am shee for whome you did not refuse the habite of a woman, to defend my life honoz and fame.

This is the husband you gaue me, now Lord of the vally of the mountaines. The Prince stayed for to behold them, and by and by he fell into reckoning who they should be, and did embrace them with great loue, as hee that had to them great affection, when hee heard that which they declared. And taking her by the hand, he went with her to the Princesse, that shee might prouide her of apparell and her companions: and gaue charge to the discret Briano that he should likewise, prouide for al the rest of the people that hee had set at libertie. And there afoze them all did this Lady tell who she was saying. O valiant Prince, how I doe esteeme my selfe happie, since my eyes haue seene that which so long since I haue desired, for since you departed in the habit of a youth from the vally of the mountaines, we neuer left desiring to knowe to what end came so high a beginning as not being an armed knight you did for me: and declared vnto him, that which in the beginning of this great historie you haue heard, when as he changed with the apparell of this Ladye (who was called Linerua, and slue that cruell Argion, and made void that abhominable custome which he obserued) til such time as Lelio, my brother & your Page, at his returning from the great Britain for your absence, told vs, he did vnderstand that you were of Grecia and no lesse then a Prince: & vnto Trebatio Emperoz of Constantinople. If Linerua and her deer beloued husband Brandido nio reioyced hereat, you may put it out of doubt. So forth with when we knew the happie news of the Prince your brother, we did procure to see you. Then we left these your Castles in the guard and keeping of my brother Telio, and with onely two Pages, & this daughter, we departed the

Ual

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Walley towards Grecia in a Ship that was well pzeant:
ded: but fortune did take from vs the good and content
which we should haue receiued in seeing you, and so alte-
red the Sea, that it brought vs to these partes, although we
haue learned, there is no moze betwene this and that
place, but one day and a night sayling beeing faire wea-
ther: we were straight apprehended with my daughter
who was then but little, and we were put in a darke pri-
son, where as I had no other good but seeing him whom
you gaue me for a husoand and Lord, and my daughter,
which is here. It goeth now vpon thirtene yeres herof,
call Prince that wee haue been in prison, without know-
ing any thing of my Father and brother. And here with
the Lady concluded with teares of ioy, for that she sawe
the Prince.

Hee did not so much esteeme your vertue as I doe (an-
swered the Greeke) that so cruelly hath intreated you:
but thanks be vnto God that hath giuen you libertie, for
vs to see one the other: and now you are not to take any
griefe for that which is past, but to giue order howe they
may know of you in your countrie, and to remaine in this
till order bee taken whether you shall goe thither, or re-
maine here.

The next day hee commaunded that all those
of the Island should ioyne together, and hee made vnto
them a long oration concerning the hard seruitude which
they were freed of by the losse of the Giants. And that hee
would make them a Lord and a gouernour by his owne
handes, and told them who hee was, the moze to reioyce
them. And with the consent of them all they married the
discreet knight Briano with the daughter of L.nerua, and
caused them to sweare him for their Lord.

They all receiued content with that the Prince or-
dained, and the new married couple were verie ioyful
to see the liberalitie of the Prince, although time did
come when it was gratified and payde.

They

The first Booke of the third Part

They were foure dayes in the doubtful Castle: In the end of which, the Princes did take their leaue of those of the Island commending them vnto peace. The like did the three frendes vnto the Tartarian, which was no small grieue vnto the faire Grisanea and the Tartarian: but seeing it could be no otherwise, they took it for well. So they set their course towards Tartaria, wheras they were receiued with all content possible, worthy of a Prince so well beloued as was Andronio, of whome in the third and fourth part shall bee made large mention, where as we will leaue them, for to declare of the Princes.

What succeeded the three Princes that went with the Damisell into Lacedemonia. Chap. 11.



The three couragious warriors ingulfed in the Sea, went towarde Lacedemonia, talking of the Tartare their new friend, & of the gallant and braue discretion of his Lady. So leauing on the one hand the Aufonian Sea, the eyght day early in the Morning they entred the Port of the Citty of Archina, for so Strabo doth call it: whereat the Damisell receiued no small content and said, that from that place to the great Citty of Lyra was two dayes iourney. There they disembarked themselves and went a Land, with their deuises changed, leauing their ancient and known shields in their inchaunted boate, they had al a like: for in a green field this alone was wrytten,

If against Loue we doe not fight,
We doe not feare our tryed might.

The Damisell reioyced at that Poësie, it came to good purpose for her busines, and said vnto them, Knightes of

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

reuengement (so we wil now call ye, I pray God that the end bee conformable vnto the Justice and the iustice which we haue. If you haue Justice answered the Grecian, account your business done, for that is able to giue vs forces more than we enioy. Your strength doth well assure me gentle knightes (said shee) although it were for a matter more difficult: but wee women haue this condition, where we loue, we are not inquiet, but when we see them secure: and I beleue that it is generall for all that loue, neuer to be assured of the good, while they liue in hope: the like we haue in our anger, for that there was neuer woman that hath bene vexed, but would procure at cost of their liues to recompence their grieffe, and rather yeelde vnto death then want reuengement. God deliuer me (said the gentle Trojan, vnto the Damsell) from falling into your wrath if you be softward: and therefore I say hee liueth a merrie and sweet life, that hath neither ioy nor grieffe caused by women. For first, for to get ioy he must serue a world of time, and when he cometh to receiue a fauour, it is with such trouble that ere hee feele it, by and by with the turne of an eye all is turned to his disgrace: But I beleue women are of the opinion, that grieffe at their hands, is an ease to a Louers heart.

It may bee gentle knight (sayd the Damsell) that he that pondzeth not the content that the Louer receiueth (if the Lady beloued be esteemed) being busied in easie things, but doth remit the content onely to the obedience promised by loue, and to receiue discontent for glozy, and for great content the grieffe ordained by the Ladye, and rigorous thornes for tender flowers, comming from her handes.

Of truth Damsell answered the Trojan, if this be all the fauour that Ladies doe giue: and thereby no other daintie to comfort their Louers, from this time I say: he that liueth of this doth not knowe what is good. She said: It seemeth that your companions bee of your
D D false

The first Booke of the third Part

false league, or els they will make shewe to defend my profound opinion, and for this battaile I will none of your ayde, except ye be Louers. There will not lacke answerers for you faire Damsell (said Roticleer) for I doe knowe some that did liue in sorrow in respect of them that gaue it, for it is a sweete discharge for them that loue to suffer, if the minde be constrained by the fairenes of the beloued: and this certaine imagination can doe so much, that when sorrow commeth, it is not felt, the reason is, for that the senses are found occupied, with so excessive content, as commeth of a faire sight, that it is not sufficient to vnlogge it out of the minde. But there be some of so little heart, that at the first encounter they yeeld, without considering the grief that is procured to the beutie of his Lady, giuing to vnderstand that he is not able to animate his heart against the assalting grieffe. Who (if he knewe howe to loue) would contend and depart glorious from this battaile, if hee esteeme this triumph for most honorable.

Then answered the Trojan somewhat touched (if an other should haue spoken it, his sword should haue defended it). This is when as the Lady is correspondent vnto her louer with daintie fauours, and sorrowfull for his grieffe, and receiueth it as her owne, then is it no grieffe that he doth suffer, being certaine of his doubt. When said Meridian, not one (Lord Oristides) being grieued, did marke the discharge of his grieffe, for that it should not be meritorious befoze the Lady: being certaine what he would haue, and to lay befoze it the reward. This doth exclude reason from perfect loue, which is the notablenes of minde, where with good is desired for the beloued, and doth procure it with trouble, and hath the reward, not of that which is hoped for, but of the acte where with it is done, leauing the reward of his content vnto the generosity of the Ladie: then is it giuen more liberally and more earnestly, than when the Louer doth binde her

in

of the Mirroure of Knighthood.

in declaring what he did suffer. Nowe you doe vnderstand Sir Knight (said the Damsell to the Trojan) the truth of my opinion, and ye doe wzong to withstand it, being so repzooned of all. And I hope that befoze you depart from Lacedemonia, you will change your iudgement according to the curiositie, wherewith this truth is declared.

In this communication they spent the morning, till it was high time to go to dinner: in a fresh and green groue they dined, recreating their sight, with the pearlye fountaines and sweet shewes, and their eares wyth the sweet songs of the little birdes, who flying the heate, were there in the shadowe, declaring their griefes with tunable chirpings.

The Princes came to the head or spring of a gallant Christall fountaine, which was vnder certaine myrtle trees, and there they alighted, and let their horses taste of the water of that sweet and cleere spring and the green grasse that was there. Then did their Pages bring forth such victuall as they brought from the doubtfull Castle, making on the greene grasse a more daintie Table than they had in Grecia, and they passed Dinner with as great content: if that Meridian had not disturbed it with the remembrance of the losse of his wife, although he was somewhat eased with the confidence in Brandasidell: and they all no lesse reioyced at the sweet musike which the birds made in the shadowe, than of that which they were wont to haue in the Royall Pallaces: but the one and the other they did leaue, for to heare a delicate voice, which at the sound of a Harpe they did heare not far off, and considering what it should be, they heard that it began with a profound sygh in this sort.

Though I be scornd, yet will I not disdain,
But bend my thoughts faire beauty to adore.

The first Booke of the third Part

What though she smile when I sigh and complaine,
It is I know to try my faith the more.

For she is faire, and fairenes is regarded,
And I am firme, firme loue will be rewarded:
Suppose I loue and languish to my end,
And she my plaints, my sighes, my prayers dispise,
O is enough when Fates for me doe send,
If she vouchsafe to close my dying eyes.

Which if she doe, and chance to drop a teare?
From life to death that balme will me vpreare.

With an other sygh no lesse than the first did the wo,
full voice conclude, which gaue occasion to the free Tro-
yan to arise, and taking his shield he desired them to tarie
for that hee would know who hee was that with so great
griefe did publish his sorrow, and went directly thether
whereas the voice was, and vnder a high and great pine
tree, he saw lying along, a knight armed in armor all pla-
ted silver like, full of green Roses, without his helm, which
lay by him, and a shield of the colour of his armor, & in the
middle of the field in place of the flower, was this Poë.

Nor frownes nor scornes preuaile,
Resolued loue to quaille.

The knight was very yong, & one of the fairest that euer
he saw, his eyes were swollen with weeping. The Tro-
yan had great desire to know who he should be, but stayed
for that he saw he would return to his doleful song, in this
manner.

Let heauen and earth, let Gods and men conspire,
To adde more griefe vnto my greeued minde:
So my faire Saint doe know my true desire,
I haue enough, content therein I finde.

Loues bonds are heauen, dull freedome is a hell,
Come all worlds woe, yet loue can make it well.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

This louing Youth intended onely to make the ayre pertaker of his græse: so turning himself vpon the green grasse, he said: Oh Loue, why in the beginning of my tender yeres hast thou made me place my felicitie in a person that hates mee? Ah swæete Mistres, I doe acknowledge your desert, and giue my græse to witnes it: yet, if I may say it without offence, as you are rare in beautie, so I am a Phoenix in loue. Oh that it pleased the heauens I might shew you my louing heart: there should you see how faith sustaineth the same, against the extremitie of all your crueltie.

This afflicted Youth could proceed no further, for that he was disturbed by the Trojan: who (desirous to know what he was) in this sort saluted him. I would faine faire Knight, know what hath brought you into this estate, & if you stand in need of my person, I will imploy it in your helpe. I need not your companie (said this disturbed Lover) much lesse your helpe: depart I pray you, for your presence doth me wrong. Thou art vncourteous (answered the Kinsman of Hector) so to reply vnto my knightly offer. Nay then I perceiue (said the Youth) you are ignorant what pleasure solitarines bringeth to the passionated Lover. I (answered the Trojan) and hope euer to be ignorant of such pleasing sorrow. O heauens! how hast thou liued said the Youth, & art not amorous? Now God defend me (said Oristides) from that madness. A generous thoughts of mine, replied the Youth, is it possible that Rosabel should liue, and heare Loue slandered: farrie thou false Knight, for with thy blood I trust to write vpon these trees the glozie of them that be Louers. And therewith like a viper trodden on he arose vp to lace on his helme, & sodainly cast a thrust at the Troian, that hee made him retire backe three or foure paces, almost past memorie. Ere hee recovered, the Youth strooke him so on the Visor, that hee made him see starres in his darke helme: and doubled another vpon his shoulder, that shee wolde pained him. By this

The first Booke of the third Part

the Trojan did plainly see, that the Knight with whom hee dealt was as well Mars his sonne, as Cupids seruant, and therefore rowling himselfe, he smit him such a blow vpon the shield, that he made him put one knee vpon the ground. The Youth was cunning, and at the discharge of y^e blow, hurt the Trojan so on the legs, that his red blood distained the greene meadow. With exceeding furie tooke Oristides his sword in both his hands, and doubled two such extreame blowes, that the young Knight knew not where he was: but quickly recovering himselfe, he returned a double payment. A thousand thoughts came vnto the Trojan in imagining who this valiant Youth might bee, yet so he dealt with him, that he made him sweat drops of blood. At the noyse of this rigozous battell came the two Princes, at which instant the Youth had feld the Trojan to the ground: whence quickly recovering, and with his sword seeking to reuenge, the Princes stept betweene them, saying: Part Knights, it is not iust to permit this battell to come to an end, without knowing the cause. It is (sayd the Youth) because this Knight counterth a Louers life vnhappie, which occasion is not so small, but if I liue, with his life he shall answer it. Sir Knight (saide Meridian) let not this slight quarrell hinder our important busines: the matter being no more, but you thinke Loues bondage sweet, and he in libertie findes his content. But that you shall perceiue doubt of his ablenes is no cause of this, I will warrant that (within these ten dayes, either here or where els soeuer you will appoint) this Knight shall end the battell. I am content (answered the yong Knight) for that your gentle disposition doth more binde mee, than this Knights arrogancie: therefore let the battell be here, where onely accompanied with my solitarie thoughts, I will attend you. Stand aside said the valiant Trojan; in cases that concerne my owne honour, I am more bound, than to wait on strangers: therefore there is no reason to disturbe vs, till the battell be ended. It cannot be said Roficler,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Acleer, for you haue giuen your word vnto this Damsell
in a time limitted, wherein if you faile she loseth her cre-
dit, and she that sent her her honour: and for this busines,
without impeach of your honoz, you may leaue it till ano-
ther time. The Troyan wold not denie the prince, so they
parted, and left the Youth, much praisiug his valiantnes:
and thereof the Troyan thus said. The beaufie which he
hath and his few yeres maketh me to doubt, for that in all
my life I haue not seene a fairer Creature: what he shuld
be I cannot imagine, except he be a kinsman to the Grece-
an prince, for he resembleth much the prince of the Sunne
your Brother. All were doubtful whom he shoulde be, but
most of all the Grecian, for that his heart did giue him in-
wardly that he shoulde be of his blood. With this suspicion
they came to their pagis, and fell to such victualls as they
had, and determined to lose no moze time, because y next
was their bittermost day. When dinner was done, they
demanded the matter of y aduenture: the which (after she
had cured the Troyans leg, and told her iudgement of his
libertie) she began with a gallant grace to declare in this
manner.

You shall vnderstand worthie Knights, that of thys
mightie Kingdome of Lacedemonia is King a most ver-
tuous knight, called Astrafio, worthie of much praise for
the prudent gouernment of his Common-wealth: and as
he deserved, so had he the loue of all his people. It was the
will of heauens high Commander to bleste him with two
Daughters at a birth: so like, that the difference is one-
ly betweene them in their names: and so exceeding faire
they were, that they rather were esteemed of all to be ce-
lestiall Angells, than humane Virgins. They were both
brought vp and nourished in the royall pallace of their ioi-
full Father, who was so delighted in their excellent per-
fections, that he had no other ioye or contentment, but to
behold them, and to bee conuersant in their companies.
The

The first Booke of the third Part

The eldest is called Thomiriana, and the yongest the faire Sarmacia: who so delighteth in hunting and armes, that she is among knights compared with the Emperesse Claridiana. When she was of age to weare armour, she was knighted by her owne Father, and maintained a mighty Justes, to her eternall honour. So farre was the prayse of these two sisters spred, that Liuius the prince of Laodicea (calling himselfe the knight of the Crownes) came thether with one alone page, and fell in loue with Thomiriana the eldest Sister: his affection so increasing, that he was forced to discouer it both to her selfe and to her Father: who reioyced and the Ladie likewise, that she was affected of so excellent a prince. All the Court was wyth their loue delighted, and she that most seemed to delight in it, was the warlike Sarmacia, who daile conuerst with Liuius and her Sister, when they were in their amorous conuersation. So long she dallyed in beholding their dalliance, that all her thoughts were captiued with Liuius perfections: and the more she strived, by reasons of wrong against her Sister, trespass against her Father, and iniurie against her owne fame, to suppress this fire, the more olenter it raged. Solitarines contents Sarmacia, if anie thing could content her: but nothing can content her, till Liuius know her hearts affection. So one day as they were a hunting she discovered it to him, wherat the prince did not a little meruaile, but dissembled it, giuing her kinde words, somewhat to quench her burning desire: but when this noble prince came vnto his Thomiriana, he confirmed the faith he had giuen her, with earnestter shewes of affection than before: The ielous Sarmacia was in presence, and not able to indure the sight, went forth and wept: but Liuius (like a constant prince) the more to assure his Thomiriana, demaunded her of her Father in marriage: who gladly graunted it. But when the prince would haue kissed the kings hands as a Father, y furious Sarmacia stept betwene them, and said: Louing father, it is not conuenient

of the Myrroure of Knighthood.

nient for the honoꝛ of Lacedemonia, to giue my Sister to a knight so disloyall: who to your curtesie being bound, is notwithstanding most vniust. And this I will maintaine against all the world. The Lord of Laodicea, did wel vnderstand the cause of her accusation, and thus answered: Malicious Princeesse, your too much vniust rage causeth ye to doo me wrong, which in my honours defence (much against my will, you beeing a Woman) I will approue. What may not be Prince Liuius said the King, for by our law the accused maye not enter battell with the accuser, but within two months bring one to answer for him. It is no small wrong answered the Prince, that being accused, I cannot defend my selfe. I am the gladder said the Lady, for I am willinger to punish some other for your iniustice than your selfe, because my Father loues ye. Ah Ladie said the Prince, you know I know the reason of this falshood, but I will not publish your fault. I know well said shee, thou art impudently audacious: and were not my Father present, I would presently bee reuenged. The King commaunded them asunder, till the 2. months of the triall were past. You may well gesse at my Ladie Thomirianaes greefe: who taking mee into her chamber, (after manie shewes of teares) thus said. O my faithfull Damsell, how doo the heauens deuide my life in parting me from Liuius, by the tyrannie of my cruell Sister: Hasten my death, O you destinies, if I may not liue to reioyce with so loyall a Prince: for I know if he be not Owner of my will, to be Deaths bryde ere I marrie any other liuing on the earth. What hast thou got Sarmacia by this crueltie? Is this my reward for participating with thee my hearts secrets? Well, thy gaine is, that thou hast got the name of a cruell Sister: and my hope is, that I shall finde one able to disproue thy falshood. After this passion, she coniuꝛed me with manie ceremonious protestations, that I should with all diligence seek her a knight to combat her Sister, whereby shee might obtaine Liuius for her

The first Booke of the third Part

husband. So I promised her, that no other than the princes of Grecia or some of their frendes I would bring for so iust a defence, although therein I lost my life. And now seeing my fortune hath fauored me to bring such high princes, it is time for you to shew that which you haue promised to all women that should haue need of your forces: for on this dependeth the life of the Princesse Thomiriana and the noble Prince Liuius. Faire Damsel said the Trojan, your demaund is iust: for it is no part of a sister to take away the content her sister receiueth, for shee was rather bound to keep it secret and further her, that made her partaker thereof. And though it be a hard thing to enter in battaile with a woman, yet I wil take it vpon me if these valiant Princes bee therewith content. Many thanks Sir knight (said the Damsell) I giue ye, and I do receiue it for the greatest curtesie that now you can shew mee, in that the busines of my Lady is so dangerous, and seeing so venturous and valiant a knight as you are doe deale in it, I am secure: and I doe beleue your companions will thinke well of it. And to shew the valor of their persons they shall not lacke occasions in this country: for it is said by wise men, there are herein maruelous aduentures. They al reioyced in that the Trojan Prince would take vpon him the battell for the Princesse. And Meridian said: it seemeth vnto me faire Damsell, that this knight seeketh the effect of the Country, seeing he hath begun to follow your band in putting his life in aduenture for women: a thing which before seemed impossible. And I beleue worthy Prince (said the Damsell) hee wil shew more than this, it may be we shall see him leaue the battaile, or if he ouercome, hee ouercome by his enemy: many more free than he hath lost their liberty in this country of Lacedemonia, and it shal be no strange thing vnto her to subiect such a free heart, as he hath seemed to haue, for I am certaine in seeing him of so gallant disposition he will bee amorous: then shal he see the truth that a while since he

re

Of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

reproued. At this time they beganne to discover the populous Citty whether as they iourneyed, and therefore tooke their helmets which their Pages caried, and pulled downe their vizors, they kissed her on the cheeke, aduising her not to tell who they were: so they take the most sweetest way to the Citty, and came thether at the third houre, when the king as yet had not gone out of the Pallace. They entred in at a gate called the serpent gate, the people that were in the streets following them, and the eyes of Ladies waiting on their gallant proposition: yet not any able to imagin what knights they should be. In this order they arriued at the Pallace, where as they alighted, and mounted into the Royal hall, where as they did see a great number of Ladies and Knights: the Ladies in company with the Queene and her daughters, and Knightes did accompany the vertuous King. The entring of these three warriors did not a little trouble the whole Hall, for that they knew not what they would haue: but when they saw them goe directly to the King, they all pacified themselves.

So when as the heroycke Trojan had done his bounden duetie, in lifting vp somewhat his visor, he directed his talke vnto the King in this manner. Worthy King of Lacedemonia, my companions and my selfe travelling to seeke aduentures to procure fame, as Knightes should, did heare somewhat far off from this place, that in your Court is great wrong done vnto the Prince Liuis of Laodicea and vnto your daughter Thomiriana. For as it hath been told vs, you granted your daughter to him with great ioy: whereat arose your second Daughter (with confidence of her owne strength) and made contradiction thereof: whereas of right she should haue procured the effect, for many reasons that shee hath knowne. And so although I neuer combated against any woman: here I saye, that I will defend the Princesse cause agaynst whome soeuer, from the Sunne rising

The first Booke of the third Part

to Sunne set, if he be content to commit it into my hands. Sir knight said the king, for your commendations of my vertue, I thanke you: but for the rest, it is put to the order of battell: so that there is nothing to stand vpon, but to see if the prince will admit you for his Champion. There with came forth the prince, apparelled in crimson taffeta cut vpon cloth of gold, richly laced, with so great gallantnes, that the princes did all affect him. All did vnto him curtesie, which he graciously returned: and humbly thanking all the knights for their great trauell, hee sayd vnto the Trojan. Sir, I referre to you my whole right, although (if it pleased the king that I might defend myne owne cause) I would bee loth to indaunger anie knight: but he saith, it is against his law. That law said the Grecian prince, is verie preiudiciall in a Common-wealth: for some may be accused, that can find none to defend the. This is not to be iudged by you sir knight (said the king, somewhat angerly) for those that ordained the law, did it with moze reason than you haue shewed to contradict it. The Greeke prince being vexed, thus answered: All that you say sir king, in your person I gainsay not: but I desire anie other, that thinketh I presume to iudge any thing which I will not defend. Neither doe I beleue sayd the king, that there will want knights to answer you, if ye make anie Challenge: and therfore you may vse your discretion. Then answered the Grecian, your person excepted (for the vertue which thereof hath been reported) I do desire two knights together, so they be naturally borne in this kingdome, that will affirme this law to bee good and iust. And I do desire other two said the prince of the Scythians, that will maintaine there hath been vsed iustice (according to the right of Nations) towards the prince of Laodicea, but rather great and manifest wrong. Which Challenge we will forthwith defend by armes, because will not multiply their anger by delaye, y^e be affected to maintaine this most vniust, violent and intollerable law. There

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

There did not lacke foure knights that came forth of the Principallest and moſte valiant in all the Kingdom, ſuch as were iealous of the honoꝝ of their king, and gaue their gages vnto the Princes, thinking thereby to get great honoꝝ. When came the faire Sarmacia, not adorned in her ſhining armour, but in a gowne of blew cloth of gold full of Precious ſtones: vpon her head ſhe wore a bayle ſo white that thow it was plainly ſene her golden haire: about her necke hung a rich ſwoꝝd by a red ſendall, and although it were vpon the garment, yet it ſeemed to be wrought in it. And this ſort ſhe paſſed by all the knights, who gaue her way to paſſe where the Princes were, who greatly maruelled to ſee her gallant diſpoſition. And when ſhee came to them (being affected to their gallant proportion) ſhe ſaid: which of you gentle Knights is he that muſt make battaile with me. All of vs (answered the heroycke Grecian) are knightes faire Lady to defend your beauty: but he whome fortune hath made choiſe of foꝝ this, is this knight (pointing to the gentle Trojan.) He iudged him of high valor, and hee could ſcarce turne his head to behold her, his ſences were raviſht in ſuch ſorte that hee knewe not what thing could giue him content, but to ſerne that gracious Princeſſe, and it ſeemed to him that ſhe came from heauen to make conqueſt of his heart, and perfoꝝme that which the Damſell had ſaid. Oh false and rigorous Cupid, ſhall I not put my hand to my penne, but thou muſt put thy ſelfe before me with thy cruell effectes: and that to Mars cannot be graunted to draw his ſwoꝝd, but thou wilt laye hold on his ſhield: and that one drop of bloud goeth not out, but it muſt be done by thy hand: It is wel ſeen in the Prophecie of Troylus, that only ſight could humble to the rigorous poke the high necke of that moſt free knight: who with Mars himſelfe would battaile, about the good he found in his freedom. The new Louer could not ſpeake, and loue alone left him courage foꝝ to ſeeke meanes how he might

The first Booke of the third Part

not offend her whom he worshipped. The experimented Lady did verie well marke his disturbance, and would not suffer it to proceede any further, but said: when will you Sir knight that wee make our battaile? By and by said the valiant Trojan, for that whē death is looked for, to hasten it, is life. The Lady did well vnderstand it, and it græued her nothing at all, for that it seemed shee neuer saw a better proportioned knight. Then came the four knights armed with their armoz, and went into the court where as the warriors did abide their comming. The five knights at the sound of the the trumpets, did meete, and made strong encounters: but the two which they hit, they ouerthrew to the ground both horse and man, without any mouing of hand or foot, they no more mouing than a rock, and the two which remained on horsebacke, returned vnto them with their swoozes in their hands: but the Grecian Prince, wold not that his delaying should be any hindzance vnto the Trojan, without drawing his sword, hee went to one, and taking him in his armes, he pulled him out of his saddle, as though he had been a child, and quesed him so hard that he made him to cry out. And he carried him directly vnto the standing where as the king was. At that instant came his friend Meridian with his foe, leaving the place for the noise of the people, in praising the strength of the two friends. In this sort they came befoze that noble king: and the Grecian said, mightie king, although the vertue which wee haue heard of you, doth binde vs to bee your friends and to serue you in whatsoeuer shalbe offered: yet the rigorous law hath made vs to passe the sound purpose which we brought with vs. Wherefoze we will not that heereof any thing should insue: but that you should behold it with eyes of reason. Most valiant knights (answered the curteous Lord) although it seemeth not so euill as you do iudge of it, I will make it voide, onely for to perforce that which knights of so great strength and curtesie require. And so from this day forwards I do it hold for nothing:

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

thing: but will that the contrarie be obserued. By this meanes most noble King, answered Meridia: is the right way to atchive to be well beloued, and not onely to be feared. Then did the Iudges bring forth the Princes with great honoz, and left them with the amorous Trojan, who had his eyes fixed that way, whence should come the Robber of his heart, till they saw her come accompanied with the most principallest of all the kingdome. What may the Trojan hope after, in that hee found himselfe overcome, and how shall he defend for the Prince of Lacedicea, when as striking his lady is more than death: This new seruant of Cupid, had such variable and contrarie thoughts, that he knew not where to begin. Till in the end he determined not to hurt his Ladie in any sort that she should receiue anger, as you shall vnderstand in the Chapter following.

What the end of the battell was, betweene the Trojan Oristides and the faire Sarmacia: and also what hapned to Rosicleer with the knight of the Forrest. Chap 12.



A thousand suspitions wrought in the Trojans heart when hee sawe the Soueraigne Princesse of Lacedemonia Sarmacia, armed with fresh shining armoz all ful of F S. gilt, and the field of them blew, with so many pzeious stones that there was no Prince in the world but would esteeme her, her helme and shield of the same. had each a plume of feathers, & on her shield the same deuise of armoz, with F S. & this Poete.

Firme faith will discover,
The intention of a Louer.

She entred in, forcing her horse with such a grace, that all the Princes said, shes much resembled the Emperesse
Cla

The first Booke of the third Part

Claridiana in her gallant propoztion, when the worthe
Princesse came she said, come forth knights, for now you
may shew how you can defend your Justice. It is hard
to me (answered the timorous youth) for that my fortune
hath brought me to be against them whome I worshippe.
The gentle Lady made no answer, but turned about her
horse and came against the Trojan, who made shewe of
the like: but at the encounter he lifted up the point of his
Launce, but shee shewing the promptnes of her valor,
made her encounter in the midst of his shield so strong-
ly that it made him somewhat to decline backwards upon
his horse crouper, and passed forwards with a slow pace,
till being settled, he returned and threw his speare from
him a good way off, which was noted of all them that were
in the place, neither would hee draw his sword. The
Grecian seeing occasion to effect what he determined, did
come to the Meridian and said. It seemeth unto mee that
Oristides hath met with one which bringeth him out of the
opinion wherein he was, and I beleue he will not now
fight with the knight of the Forrest: whether I request
you, in the conclusion of this, that you will bring him,
where as that faire youth doth carrie for vs, where I will
stay for you without faile: and it is not conuenient that you
goe with me, for any thing that might here happen. The
Prince promised to follow the Grecian, who as swift as
an Eagle, tooke up a Launce which one of the knights
left, and threw his shield at his back, he went thorow the
companye of people upon his inchaunted horse, leaving
them all maruelling at his gallantnes: but their desire to
see the battell of the Princesse did take from them that im-
agination. The warlike matron when shee came nigh
vnto him said: That knight who hath taken vpon him
the busines of Ladies, what so little oversight he ouerslips
is a notable fault, howe much more this which you haue
done, for it is noted of all. This were Lady (sa'd the
Lover) if the battaile were made with knights, and not
with

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

With Angels, against whom my Lance and sword haue
no power, neither may my selfe do lesse then worship the.
You do me wrong Sir knight said she, so to driue off the
battaile. But it is moze wrong said he, that I should en-
ter in combat with her I so affect. The Lady somewhat
angry, stroke him such a blowe vpon his shield, that it see-
med a rock had fallen vpon him: & seconded another with
a thrust, that she made him almost to lose his saddle, and
gaue him the third with so great courage nigh vnto the
skirt, that she disarmed all that part: yet for all this the
Trojan did nothing but breake her blows, and put a side
his body by the lightnes of his horse. The minds of some
that were present were in doubt, although the Prince of
Laodicea was secure. Contrarie thoughts were in the
rigorous Damsell, who made so great hast, that some-
times it toke away her breath. The Trojan did beare
her a mightie blow, and in crossing his sword for that it
was of better mettle than the Ladies, it cut hers asunder
in the middelt, whereat he receiued great discontent, for
that which his Goddesse shuld receiue: but loue wrought so
in that small time, that it forced him to shewe a gentle
tricke, and gaue great suspition to all that did behold it.
Which was, he seperated himselfe a little, and toke his
sword by the point, and offered it vnto his Ladie, saying:
Let your highnes pardon mee in that you haue lost your
sword by my occasion, with this you may conclude the
battaile, in taking away my life: which is the most readi-
est in all the world to serue you. I haue no need of other
weapons (answered the valorous Damsell) hauing a dag-
ger wherewith to succour me, you haue not any thing to do
but with your sword to doe your best. It is not vned, god-
desse of my life, said hee, in our Country, to make any
battaile with weapon of aduantage: and therewith he put
it vp into the sheath, wherat they all maruelled, and also
the king, who could not refraine but say. This knight doth
much esteeme of women, for that he hath no power against
them,

The first Booke of the third Part

them, not attributing it vnto her new affliction. Now both the Trojan fully vnderstand the letter which the wise Gelasio did send, when they were vpon departure from the Iland of Fangomadan, that he should see his head in the hands of his most cruell enemy. And for that it might the sooner be accomplished, he closed with the Infant, and laid his amozous armes on her: but hee found a contrary answer in the angry Lady, blaming her owne ouersight, she did wound him cruelly with her dagger betwene the ioynts of the vambrace, that it made him giue a pittifull grone, which caused the Lady the more to respect him, as though he had done al the seruice possible. And it could not be but that the gentle Sarmacia when she saw the bloud of him that loued her, vpon her dagger, but that she took some new compassion, and althoughe it was but a litle it increased so much that it endured to the death. The amozous Trojan seeing himselfe hurt, tooke hold of her dagger by the hylt, with so great force that hee wryng it out of her hands, and left her without, and offered his vnto her saying: it doth not profit gentle Lady, the procuring of reuengement with your weapons, for if you wil it must be with mine, although vnworthy for that they are dedicated to your seruice. In this contention and amozous wassailing, they continued till Sunne set, which gaue him occasion for to leaue his Lady, & alighting from his horse, went whereas the Judges were, who gaue him the glory of the victory, at the sound of an infinite number of instrumentes: but seeing that with reason his Lady might be grieved, he would not leaue her so, but went whereas she was, & kneeling down, gaue her his weapons for to do with them and himselfe her pleasure. & for this time (said the somewhat affectioned Sarmacia) wil none of your weapons, neither accept you, till such time as with mine own, I take reuengement to your cost. For the rest the Prince of Laodicea is free, the heauens hath ordained it, & my sister wife to him that I loued more than my soule: but I will first pul it out
with

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

With my own hands, than loue him that doth not consider my desert. Neither doe I thinke to put on any more harness, if I doe not let him vnderstand the euill he hath vsed toward me. And therewith so fast as hir horse could run she went forth, the same way which the Grecian went, and none was able to stay her, although the King cryed out that they should doe it: for the red threatening of them that did offer it, & knowing her will they did let her passe, where as the Prince within a litle while did see her enter into the Forrest that was so nigh vnto the Cittie. The worthy Lady being departed out of the place, leaving the Louer in obscure darknes with the absence of his Sunne, hee went vnto the King, requesting that forthwith they might be married, hauing confidence that Liuius the prince of Laodicea had committed no offence. There needed no great perswasions, for the king greatly loued the Youth. Euery one requested him to pull off his helme, and to tell them who he was: but he seeing that Rosicleer was lacking, and that it would be troublesome to stay, he excused it as wel as he could, remitting it vnto the Damsell, of whom he tooke his leaue and said, that she shuld tel them whom he was the next day, for that he wold not meet with them. She did promise him not with a few teares, to see her selfe absent from so valiant and worthy Princes: but for that she could doe no other wise, she forthwith made them to be knowen vnto her mistresse Thomiriana, that accepted it with great content, requesting her not to make it known vnto any til that day was past. All reioyced with the new Prince, for he was of all welbeloued, & remained greatly bound vnto the princes, when as he knew who they were, where as we a while will leaue them.

Of the great battaile, that Rosicleer the Prince of Grecia had with the knight of the Forrest, & what hapned. Cha. 13

VVith new and carefull thoughts, went the Grecia Prince forth of the Court of Lira, & could not tell

The first Booke of the third Part

who that faire and tender Youth should bee, that was so valiant. He knew not whether his horse did carrie him, neither what he did, he was so troubled in his imagination till such time as hee heard a rustling amongst the bushes: and looking with more attension then befoze he did, he heard a voyce which said vnto him, Worthy Sonne of Trebatio, wherefore dost thou hasten to seeke the Knight, for the blowes thou finitest on his body, thou giuest to Oliuias soule. The obscure wordes did cause him more to suspect, and he could not imagine from whom it was spoken, but not reckning of them, he pricked forwards his horse with more haste, directly whether as he thought he had left the knight: but he had not ridden many paces when he heard the same voyce, which said. Knight of Cupid, is this the loue thou hast vnto thy Oliuia, behold if thou dost this, thou goest against her will. Although I lose my life and all the Mexican estate, (answered somewhat aloud the angry Prince) I will goe forwards to see who this knight might be. The voice said. O euill knight that for so many fauours giuen by thy Oliuia, thou wilt now pay her so euill, reioycing to goe to shed her bloud. This gaue him a greater desire to know who the youth should be, and could not imagine that it should be his Sonne, for then he thought Oliuia would haue tolde him of it. In this doubt, the night ouertooke him, not far from a sheephhouse, where hearing noise, he went thither, and asked part of their poore sustentation: to whom they gaue it with great good wil, for that he was of a gallant proportion & wel armed. He sate down with them to supper: and when hee pulled off his helme, they receiued great content, to see him so faire and Maiesticall: being at Supper, the cheefest said vnto an other Shepheard: haue you seene one so like the knight that was here yesterday? The Prince did well understand them for that hee could speake the language, and asked them where he might find that knight they talked of: It may be said the shepheard, & he will be here to night, for

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

for he told vs yesterday, that he must remaine hereabout a few dayes. Can you tell me said he, whom he is? No, answered the Shepheard, onely somewhat of his balo: wee can tell. For one day being here at dinner, there came a chafed Liones, who would haue run vpon vs, and without doubt haue slaine vs, if he had not been here: who arose vp, and at one blow cut her in two peeces, & sat downe as though he had done nothing. Wee carried the Liones for a present to our holy Temple: and at our returne, we saw him ouerthrow two knights at one Encounter, the one with his lance, the other with his armed fist, & without moze tarrying, he put himselfe into the thickest of the Wood. The prince reioyced at that he heard, imagining him to be his Brothers Sonne. So passing away a good part of the night, he parted from the Shepheards, leauing his horse with them, and went a good way off, putting his shield vnder his head, he fell asleepe: till Cynthia gelling the yong knight (who lay not farre off) to bee Endimion, shined with moze than ordinarie brightnes, and with her light beames awaked both the knights at once: the yong knight bidding sleepe fare well with a great sigh. Then taking a Harpe, he began to sing so sweetly, that the Greek prince with heedfull attention hearkened to his song.

Of Loues great power, eternall be my Song,
His praise be still the subiect of my verse:
And as I sing, let me the praise reherse
Of my harts Souereigne, though she worke my wrong.

Be still my tunc, thou speakest blasphemie,

Wrong is not offered by her Deitie.

She looketh strange, because I should intreat,

For it is reason mortalls suppliant bee

To Saints, indude with heauenly Maiestie,

And such is Liriana, or more great:

Therefore I must not count it iniurie,

What seeming harme so ere she offers mee.

The first Booke of the third Part

The amorous Youth with new sighes concluded by a
sweet song, and then thus complained: Ah Liriana, what
hath Rosabel deserved, that thus he must liue a dying life,
banished from your presence? If it be that hereby you de-
sire to haue your beauties same spread by my hearts affec-
tion, let me be a little comforted by knowing that I am af-
fected. Now would the Nephew of Achilles haue gone vn-
to him, but was againe stayed by his sweete and delicate
voyce, that sounded in this manner.

Let be my greefes, why doo you mee assaile?
In vaine in vaine my death you doo intend:
My thoughts alone my feeble life defend,
And cheere my dying heart, when it would quile.
Then Greefe auoyd, since thou canst not preuaile,
For why my thoughts my absent Ladie see:
And that conceit alone giues life to mee.

It giues me life, a wearie wearie life:
Come therefore greefe, thou maist at last haue gaine,
For my heart faints afflicted by disdain.
Sad hope yeelds vp vnto the murdering knife
Of blacke despaire, whose terrors still are rife:
And driue all ioy from wretched wretched mee,
Because my thoughts no smiles but frownes doo see.

But Griefe away, againe I bid adieu,
No more no more I will thee intertaine,
I will embrace my freedome once againe:
No more will I desire her face to view,
Whose wrongs so long I bootlesly did rue.
But liue I will contemning louers life,
Wherein all good is geason, wrong is rife.

Impious blasphemers! (sodainly cride out this youth)
Shall Rosabell euer presume againe to see the Sunne, that
against

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

against Loues power hath so blasphemed : Repent the
Rosabel, repent the : where with he againe thus sung.

Sweete Loue shew pittie, shew pittie :

For I haue thee offended,

I doo disclaime my hatefull dittie,

Which I so rudely ended.

Thou art almightie (Loue) alone,

Life without thee there is none.

The Louer of Oliuia would no longer stay, but pacing
swiftly to the Mouth, counterfetting his voyce somewhat
like the Trojan, thus said : Up Knight, and defend thy lo-
uing life, for I am come without my companie, because I
would not be parted til I haue proued libertie the sweetest
life. I too much esteeme of you sir Knight (said the vn-
knowne Nephew of Trebatio) not onely for comming,
but for comming thus vnto mee alone : and therewith la-
zing on his helme, hee assailed the Greeke Prince in such
sort, that at three resistlesse blowes hee ouerthrew him to
the ground. O infernall Furies, to which of you shall I
compare our Prince, when he saw himselfe by one alone
Knight so handled : for rising againe, at two blowes hee
left him almost senselesse : but recouering, there began the
greatest battell in the world. Witnesses they wanted not
anie, for the Forrest Nymphes and Satyres, beasts tame
and wylde were their beholders : the Shepheards also, a-
waked with the noyse of their strokes, stood wondring at
their furious fight. Foure howers the faire Dame gaue
light to their heauy blowes : and then leauing the worlds
charge to her amorous brother, she left (for pittie) the fight
of that pittilesse battell, the contenders beeing so wearie,
that they were forced to bzeath themselves : the couragi-
ous yong Knight imagining, that (except some diuell had
possessed him) it could not be the knight with whom he com-
batted the night before, touching true loue & free libertie.

The first Booke of the third Part

So thought the Greeke prince himselfe, for neuer anie but his brother brought him to that estate. With this conceit his choller so increased, that without speaking any word he went against his Enemy, whom he found not unprouided, and together they strooke such blows, that they both stooped on their knees. Foure howers they thus continued, much wearied, but nothing discouraged. And in the midst of this contention, the wise Lyrgandeos Damsell came forth of the Forrest, and put her selfe betweene them, saying: Stay knights awhile, and heare me speake, for hauing done yee both seruice, I am come to aske a boon of you. Both the knights knew her, and presently granted it. Leave off your battell then said she: and though it be my request, yet is it for both your benefits. Rosicleer was somewhat moued, yet at last hee said: Damsell, for your sake I am content, if this knight be so pleased. I am not pleased said the yong knight, to haue the battell cease. I will exclaime on you said the Damsell if you doe procede, to be a false knight and recreant of your word. For you promised me when I guided you to the Caue of y^e wise Artidon, (where you demaunded the ende of your loue, and whose Sonne you were) that you would neuer deny me a lawfull request: and this is most iust, for it requisite that betwene you there be eternall friendship, and heere I am certaine it must begin. And in ending these words, shee vanished away, leauing them much amazed. Both of the knights put vp their swords, and the Grecian thus began. Most valiant knight, it seemeth this Damsell knoweth more of our estate than we our selues: and seeing she saith we must be friends, for my part I offer it you with most intire affection, being likewise heretoe moued with certain inward motions, which I cannot expresse. Inuincible knight, answered the faire Pouth, great is my benefit to haue friendship with the best knight in the World: and I may well say they told me true, that certefied me my best good should meeete me in Lacedemonia. And heere looke I

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

for as much good as I haue in Grecia, though there remain my Soueraigne Oliuia, whom you (for then had the yong Knight toke off his helme) so much represent, as were it not that I know she is not giuen to armes, I should be-leave it were her selfe: therefore faire Sir, resoluie my sus- picious heart, of whence you are? What my selfe knows I will acquaint you with replide the Youth. The Soldan of Niquea brought mee vp, in companie of Doriano his Sonne, and Liriana (my diuine Mistres) his matchlesse Daughter. Till I was of age to beare armes, I tooke the Soldan for my Father: who then knighting me thus said, Rosabel, thy Parents are to me vnknownen, for a li- enesse brought thee to mee an infant, and by a white Rose on thy brest thou hadst thy name: a Scroll shee brought in her mouth, which said thou shouldest be my greatest ene- mie, till the Swan put peace betwene vs. Though it somewhat græued me to be of vnknownen Parents, yet my hope to enioy Liriana, possessed me with ioy: and she a lit- tle cherished my hope, till on a sodaine shee forbade mee to sollicite her with loue, and with her coyresse banished me the Countrey. So (discontent) I imbarcked my selfe for Russia, purposing there at the Caue of the wise Artidon to enquire touching my birth: but I was diuinen by tempest on this Coast, where I was no sooner landed, but I heard a voyce that said. Welcome the glorie of Greece and ho- nour of great Britaine, the greatest Frend your Father hath sends you this armour, and willeth you to leaue off that you weare. And seeing nobodie, this armour was laid by mee, which you see fitteth my bodie as it had been made for me. While I was arming mee therewith, a Dwarfie came vnto me, and said: Take courage Rosabel, for you shall in this armour meeete one of the valiantest knights in the world, and him shalt thou assaile with bitter hate, beeing most bound to yeld him loue. After the Dwarfie depar- ted, came the Damsell that parted our battell, saying to me: Rosabel, grant me a town, and I will bring you to the

The first Booke of the third Part

wise Artidon. This being the thing I most desired, I promised her any thing: whereupon immediately shee brought me thither. Being there, the wise man unto my demand thus answered: That it was not convenient as yet to know my parents, but he said they were such as in Grecia most flourished for armes: that my loue should in the ende after many sorowes prove successfull. And for a token of the truth, hee said that I should meete in Lacedemonia the knight that discovered the Caeue, whom verily I gesse to be your selfe, and desire thereof to be resolved: for of my selfe I haue said all I know. With great affection the Greeke Prince answered: Where the discoverie death faire knight, yet would I satisfie you in that you aske. Know then, that I am Rosicleer, Brother to Alphebo Emperour of Trapisond, and he that discovered the Caeue of Artidon, when once I departed discontent out of Great Britaine from Oliuia the Princesse thereof, now my beloved Wife. The content that Rosabel receiued excelled: and in his ioyfull passion he brake out. O that fortune so fauoured me (right worthy Prince) that I might call you Father: in the meane time, let me honour ye as my Lord. And therewith would haue kissed his hands, but Rosicleer kissing his cheek, said: Were I blessed with such a Sonne, I would thinke the heauens on earth had giuen me all happines. But I will intreat you to go into Greece with me, where of Oliuia we shall be resolved: and I will afterwards with all my Friends goe with you to Niquea, whence (if she consent) we will bring the Ladie you so much loue. Oh with what content remained Rosabel! he could not but embrace his suspected Father: who with like affection infolded him. As they sate thus ioyously together, Meridian and Oristides came to y^e place, who wondered to see the Grecian so familiar with y^e young knight. But Rosicleer resolved them of his suspicions, & began to perswade the Trojan, that he should not offer to proceed with the battell in defence of free life: for (sayth he)

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

hee) I perswade me this knight will put the matter into my hands. So will he to doubt ye not said Meridian, for Oistides is already Loues swoyne Champion. Therewith alighting, and all sitting together, the gentle Scythian discoursed from poynnt to poynnt the whole manner of the Combat betwene the changed Trojan and the faire Sarmacia; whereat Rosicler exceedingly laughed, but Rosabel rose vp, and embracing the Trojan said: Bring friend to this worthy Greeke Prince, I am bound to you in dutie: but being a true Conuertite in recanting the heresie you held yesterday, and becoming Loues seruant, my loue to you is more increased. As the Trojan began to reply, he was disturbed by the swift comming of a verie well proportioned knight in blacke armour: who being nere them, said. Worthy knights, by your armour I see you are the same that yesterday in the Pallace of Lira wrought meruailes. Farre off is my native Country, where that I might iustly report I haue dealt with such a knight, my desire is to proue my self with him that made the last battell. The Trojan stept forth and said: I am the knight ye looke for. It seemes you are indeed said the blacke knight, therefore mount you, and defend this that you shall heare: You did not in the Combat yesterday the part of a Defendant, ye should haue forced your aduersarie to confesse the wrong done to the accused, and not haue so delayed the time to make an end without victorie. Do you know sir knight said the Trojan, who was my contrarie? A woman said the other knight, but that is not a whit materiall: the right of the battell thou performedst not, and thereupon growes my defiance, which if thou be a iust knight thou wilt answer. Els (said the Trojan) let Sarmacias faire eyes neuer giue end to the begun sorrow of my heart, if thou be not answered and chastised also for thy presumption. And therewith the furious Trojan mounted his horse, and assailed his Contrarie, using all able violence hee could both with sword and speare.

The first Booke of the third Part

But this blacke knight vbled the like curtisie with him, as he had done vnto the faire Sarmacia, for indeede it was she: and neither with point of speare noz edge of sword did she returne him blow, but onely for foure howers defended her selfe against his fierce assaults: and then finding opportunitie, she cloased with him, saying. Be not so hasty warlike knight, I come not to vex you, but quit your kindnes she wred me yester day at my Fathers Court. At this, the Trojan sobainly retyred, and the Ladie vnarming her head, sayd: Now am I out of your debt. And out of yours shall I neuer be said Oristides (trembling with feare of her indignation), but pardon me diuine prince, and receiue my sword that hath offended you, and with it the Dwners heart. I receiue it said the Ladie, and giue you mine in pature, till wee mæte againe, as mæte wee will: and in saying this, shee returned as swift as winde, leauing the princes not a little wondzing and reioycing, but especially Rosabel, who highly delighted in the Troians change. And as they were bidding God giue him ioy of his sword, they discovered a Barke that came swiftly towards them: and from vnder the hatches appeared a Damselfe resembling her that parted their battell, y said. Worthie Princes, the wise Lyrgandeo needeth your help, and desireth you to enter this Bark. Rosabel was nearest, who with his horse presently leapt in, saying: I will bee the first, to shew my dutie to your Lord. He was no sooner entred, but the boat remoued from land, and the damselfe cryed aloud to them. Now Rosicleer will thy mortal enemy Gelasio worke that vengeance on thy Sonne and Oliuias, which on thee he could not, in the Iland of Fango-madan: and thou Trojan, looke to haue all thy content turned into lamentation: and with this y boate & all departed out of sight, leauing the Princes so greeued, that if the true messenger of Artemidoro had not comforted them, their perill had been great. Heere must we awhile leaue them, to tell you what hapned to the prince of Dacia.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Of the aduenture which hapned to the prince of Dacia
on the Sea. Cha. 14.



The worthy Dacian, glad of the happy fortunes of Torismund and Andronio his new friends, sayled in his enchanted boate from France with great swiftnesse, till comming where he might behold part of Sauoy and Spaine, his barke made some small stay, that his kinde eyes might gratifie with their louing lookes the Countries of the faire Dutchesse whom in France he rescued, and his kind Torismund hee so much loued. And being ready to breake forth in passion to praise their happie Princes, hee was disturbed by a violent whirling of the water: from the midst thereof arose a Sea-nymph, sitting on a Dolphin, who said. The content is great (gentle knight) which the sight of these daintie Countries doe giue you: but I tell you, their best fortune shall be when the great Lyon of Spaine, shall send his deer and hidden Wyger (who till then shall be nourished in base clothes) for a scourge to his beloued Countrie, filling the Ausonian lake with strange blood. This shall be he who in his tender yeeres shall conclude things that shall be more esteemed than those that are past: and so farre he shall extend his arme, that the destinies with pure enuie shall triumph ouer him, to triumph of the victorie due vnto him, attributing to his power that which the rigorous Wyger had got. And this shall not be the last good, which the heauens both promise vnto Spaine: neither doe they so much forget Sauoy, for the most and the best good of Spaine shall come vnto Sauoy, and that land shall bee equall with the most advantaged, and may the be called the fresh flower of Spaine, her good comming by courteous vsing of the venerous Lyon, who being retyred into his little Cane, shall reioyce in the tender little Lambe, who with his make,

The first Booke of the third Part

nes both subiect the vntamed nations. This said, the
Pimph tuning a harpe, began to sing as followeth.

Not those faire three in Ida that contended,
To win the Ball, the Shepheard Venus gaue,
Whereat the other two became offended:
In all their worths faire Catalinas haue.
For it is she alone, and none but shee,
Excelles the graces of those gracious three.

Having finished her song, she said: by this beantie shal
Spaine bee blessed and you shall shortly lose your free-
dome. Where with the Pymph banished, and the inchan-
ted Barke kept course into the Italian Sea: the Dacian
sailing somewhat troubled, though neuer perswaded again
he should be a louer. The fourth day of his navigation,
the swift Barke ran a shoze in Italy: and the Dacian for
that he was wearie of the sea, forthwith caused his in-
chaunted horse Tirio to be taken forth. With this the war-
like Youth armed himselfe, and mounted vppon his horse
desirous to meet some people to be informed what countrey
it was. With this desire he passed till it was mid day, fol-
lowing the current of a brooke, till such time as he came to
the head spring: there he washed and refreshed himselfe of
the beate, and did eate of that which Fabio brought with
him: then returning to his begun journey, he heard not far
off blowes of a combate, then he tooke his Lance & with
a light pace followed the way from whence hee heard the
noise, till such time as hee saue amongst the trees, two
knights in battaile, and nere them a Damsell bound vn-
to a knotty Ashe making great lamentation. Not with
a little grieve came the pittifull Prince vnto the Damsell,
who seeing him so well proportioned, said. Ah Sir knight
if there bee in you the strength (which your person shew-
eth) deliuer me from these two false knights, who are in
controuersie which shall defile me. The Prince was so

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

angry that without remembryng to vnloose her, he returned against them, saying. Wacke knyghts, for so vnjust a cause you should not make battaile: more iustly eyther of you should help women, and not seeke to dishonour them. Much lesse care hast thou of her (they answered) that without any more consideration leauest her to the mercy of our swords: and without any more respect, they both returned against the Dacian, mallice making the quickly friends. The Dacian wold not with the point of his speare, take reuengement of such people, but with the end hee had in his hand he stroke one such a blow vpon his harnes, that he buckled it to his brest in such sort that it toke away his vitall breath, where with he fell dead to the ground: and returning to the second he stroke him so on the head, that he made his byaines flye in the field, therewith quenching the desire they had vnto the Damsell. In the meane time Fabio his Page had vntyed her, who greatly marvelled at the valiantnes of the knight, and came vnto him saying. The heauen (Sir Knight) reward you for this you haue done for me. For from thence cometh the reward of them that giue such succours, which with my life like wise I will repay. I giue you thanks faire Damsell said the prince: but I pray you tell mee what was the occasion that these knyghtes did thus misuse yee, as also what Countrie this is where I am? The Damsell humbling her selfe, said: most valiant Knight, for euill persons to put in execution their kantred will, little or no occasion at all serues. So it is, as I walked on my way in this Forrest, I met with them, and laying hold vpon me, without any other occasion, they put me in that sort as you found me, and by and by began their battaile to try who should first make spoile of my honoꝝ. And to the rest touching this Countrie; you shall vnderstand woꝝ by Knight, that you are verie nigh vnto the great Cittie of Rome, for in two daies iourney you may come thether.

The

The first Booke of the third Part

The gentle Dacian was ioyfull to bee in that famous Countrie, so praised throughout al the world: with many thanks he departed, leauing the Damsell much bound to his seruice, and verie ioyfull that she had seene so warlike a knight, she went onwards on her way. The Dacian took his way towards Rome, and came that night vnto a faire and delightfull groue of poplers, where he intended to passe away the night, being summer: so there he alighted from his horse, and made his Target his pyllowe: but about a lxxviii a clocke at night he was waked by the noise of two shepheards, who not farre from him were a talking: but he imagining it to be some other thing, buckled on his helme, & went by little and little amongst the trees to see who they were y talked, til by the light of the Moone he saw two shepherds set downe vnder a huge pine tree talking together. And as one that was free from the grief of amorous cares, he receiued content to heare their talke, the one who seemed to be yonger then the other, with some shew of anger said, it is not to be doubted, friend Lisio that the bzauerie of my shepperdesse exceedeth, for onely with her beaultie, hath nature atchined the name of famous. Which causeth Aliano to affirme his shepperdesse is she that deserueth Apollo for her shepherd. If he receiue content to come forth it is onely to behold her, but not to giue her light, for hee doth well know the eyes of my shepperdesse exceedeth his beames brightnes. And this will I defend, against them that be honored for Goddesses in the great Tinacria. And therewith taking forth his wel tuned rebecke, he began this song with great sweetnes.

My Loue is of the Heard beloued,

Yet by his teares she is not moued.

In the sand his words she writeth,

And rends the songs that he inditeth

O this she me with scornes requireth:

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

If I say I will not loue her,
My eyes teares my griefes discouer,
I must loue though she doe hate,
Sue though she disdain my state,
And sing in teares; this life me best delighteth.

At the end of this song, thus answered the other Shepheard. Aliano thou dost loue, and takest it for the best life: I doe not condemne thee, but rather conceiue as thou desirest the same due to thy Shepheardesse. For this is the course of euery loue, to say that his Shepheardesse is a Phoenix, and for such a one doth hold her, his crow must needs be a swan who euer gainsaie it: and yet there can be but one excellent, and if yours be she, whome doe all other Shepheards praise, especially Poncenio. The cholar of the amorous shepheard would not let him proceede any farther, but he said. It is sufficient friend Lisio, I can with my rough crooke make knowne that Poncenio is an hereticke, in affirming that his Shepheardesse deserueth the merit of mine: and being ouercome with cholar, at two leapes he put himselfe nigh vnto Poncenio with his knotte crooke in one hand, and in his other his Jerkin, and said. Defend thee shepheard, for it is time to see, if thou hast hands to maintaine that which thou hast so falsely published. Poncenio was not a shepheard, that would take such reprochfull words: so with the swiftnes of a hawke hee put himselfe in the same order as his contrarie was, where you should haue scene one of the prettiest contentions in the world: for as the shepheards did esteeme themselves to be louers, they did not forget to be balliant. The Dacian Prince reioyced in beholding them, and greatlie wondred at the power of Loue, that amongst shepheards she wed this rigour: but he suffered them not to proceed forwards, for that the contention would be perilous. And so with a quicke pace, came amongst them saying: giue way gentle Shepheard, it is not iust that this contention shuld

The first Booke of the third Part

goe forwarde. Valiant knight answered Poncenio, it is not so small a matter as you thinke, if you haue tasted loue, you can say it is the greatest and most iust quarrell and rather to chuse death, than in this case to leaue off contention: yet for all this, for my loue (said the Dacian) I will that ye would be frends. Of truth gentle knight (answered Poncenio) many daies past haue I procured this frendship with all plainnes in y^e world, and I beleue because it was so simple, it hath bin occasion that this shepheard doth thinke I doe it of necessitie, he knowing which all the world shall know, that if he loue, I liue by louing a shepheardsse, who in beautie, discreation and proportion, equalleth the most excellent. I cannot (said Aliano) but acknowledge the many good parts of your shepheardsse brother Poncenio: yet for all this you know, that my shepheardsse hath caused her to yeeld. These are passions (saith knight) said Lifio, so long time past, that it would be tedious to declare them: But since you haue taken the matter in hand, I pray you perswade them to leaue off contentions past and become frendes: for frendship doth ease the sower troubles of this amorous euill. And therewith the Dacian Lord went directly vnto the Shepherds, very ioyfull that he had seene that controuersie, and he tooke them perforce by their hands, and made them frends, which endured vnto death. And the more to binde their frendship, they all foure together sate downe on the greene and fresh grasse, making a signe vnto Fabio, to bring the horses, and likewise to inioy the frendship of the shepherds. The gallant Youth did pull off his helme, and shewed forth his faire countenance, but he had not so soone pulled it off, when as the shepheard Lifio fel down at his fete, saying. O warlike Prince of Dacia, what a happy day hath this been vnto me: wherein I haue seene that which I so much desired euer, him whom the gallant countrie of Tinacria worshippeth for their God, as a restorer of their lost content. The prince caused him to arise, wondering how he was known in

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

in those parts : and demaunding of him, howe hee knewe him. The Shepheard answered, Worthy warriour, I am a naturall Tinacrian, and haue there fed and kept Cattle, and came many times vnto the Citty, whereof the whole Country beareth the name, there I haue seene in the Pallace portrayed your figure, and the Emperour Alphebos of Trapisond, vnto whome those of Tinacria are so much bound. And your figure and his I so earnestly printed in my hart, that I desired aboue all things in the world to see the substances. I giue you great thanks (said the Prince) for the good will which you haue shewed vnto the Emperour and mee, and in any thing I may, commaund mee. Great pleasure I shall take if you declare vnto mee any newes from those partes, for since I departed from Rosicler the Prince of Grecia, I haue not heard any thing thence for traueilling in strange Countries. What which I can say (answered the Shepheard) is the ioy which the Emperour of Constantinople your Uncle hath, for the acknowledging of the Princes of Trapisonde to be the sons of the mighty Alphebo, although I beleue it will bee no lesse ioy to know the Prince of Tinacria, Poliphebo, who they say is equall in valor to all the rest of the brethren : for being called the knight of the silver branch in al parts whereas he hath trauelled, hee hath left the world full of his fame. The Dacian curteously thanked Lylio, and was ioyful at his newes: and after some earnest perswasions of them to continue frends, he prepared to ride towards Rome, the Shepheards bringing him on his way within the sight of the Common way, and were griued to part with him. Which he seeing, promised if occasion serued hee would againe see them: at which reioycing, they returned to their Foldes: where wee will leaue them, to tell what hapned to the Prince on his way to Rome.

The first Booke of the third Part

What hapned to the prince Heleno, with the Emperors daughter of Rome Roselia: and her guarders. Chap. 15.



He morning star, had scarce thewed it self, when as the Lord of Dacia, in Jorneying toward the mighty Citty of Rome, stayed to refresh himself at a cleare fountain, preparing his armour, til it was time to ride, so; that he began to discover the Citty and to meete with much people: so he trauelled till it was two a clocke, when being not far from the Citty, hee saw coming by a great and broad way, a troope of people, where he imagined it shuld be needful to take his speare of Fabio his Page, advising him that in no case he should tell who he was, till he aduized him. In this sort he went nigh vnto the tumult of people, where he might discover a great & sumptuous Coatch, which was drawn by twelue white horses, al their trappings & furniture ful of precious stones and vpon them twelue dwarfes, all apparelled in greene cloth of gold, according to the colour of the coach, wherein came three Ladies, in his opinion the fairest that hee had sene. She in the middelt (who seemed to be cheefe) was in greene likewise, but so full of precious stones, that it dazzled his sight. This gallant Lady was with her haire loose, with a rich Fanne in her hand, and vpon her gilted head a garland of fine gold, wherein was set a shining Carbuncle, which of it selfe gaue a great light. The two Ladies were in red, cut vpon blew Winkell, full of gold lace with curious works, their gownes somewhat low collars in such sort, that their snowy brestes were discovered: behinde the Coatch came twelue knightes, armed in fresh and shining armor, and before it as many all with greene Beners, full of figures, which signified the Ladies name, Nigh vnto the side of the Coatch came three knights, the best proportioned in the world, the one with greene armor, the

of the Mirroure of Knighthood.

the richest (except his owne and his Friends) that he euer saw. In his shield was painted a Ladies face, with this posie.

This faire fier is the light.

That giues brightnes to each sight.

He was gallantly mounted, his horse trapped suitably in greene. The other two were in shining red armour, and on their shields both had one deuice, beeing a sea couered with a net, and at the ende therof a faire Ladie, with this Motto.

Loue that earlt did glorie get,

Cannot scape faire Beauties net.

As the Dacian admired them, so wondred they at him: and on the sodaine came a Damsell to him, and with gallant curtesie said. The thre knights that are the keepers of yonder Ladies, gessing you a knight amorous, desire you to iust with one of them. I wold satisfie that request sayd he, but I pray you certesie them I am not amorous. It is like (said the Damsell) you lone your Ladie little, that dare not for her hazard a sal: but you shall iust ere ye goe, or she w great signes of cowardise. And therewith she rid swiftly to the knights and Ladies, who laughed exceedingly, especially when she told them he bare Cupid for his deuice, and yet denied to be amorous. Back they sent her againe with this message. Sir, our knights send you choice of thre things: whether you wil iust with the, lose your shield, or blot out the deuice, for with that shield they sweare you shall delude no more. They haue the advantage (answered the prince) for Louers are made hardie by their Ladies fauors. The Damsell thinking him a pure coward, said: Wherein they shall haue no advantage, here, take this rich it well for my fauor, on this condition, that if you be ouerthrowne, you surrender it to the victor. Agreed said the Dacian: and with great gallantes he stood readie for the iusts: all the thre knights hauing receiued fauors of y Ladies, to giue if he wer victor.

The first Booke of the third Part

The first y came against him was one of the red knights, whom the Dacian ouerthre w to the ground, beeing himselfe therat no moze moued than a rocke : then came the other red knight and was serued in the same order, to the great amazement of all the beholders. Heleno being nere the Damsell said : I want a speare (faire Damsell) for this Greene Knight, playe you the Page and chouse mee a good one, and you shall see me well defend your iell. The ioyfull Damsell chose two of the best speares, and giuing him one, he went against the Greene Knight, that stayed for him : and in the encounter both brake, and with their horses rushed so together, that the Greene Knight with his horse dead betwē his legs came to y ground. The prince comming to the ouerthrowne knights said : Of this enill your selues are guiltie, heereafter iest not at them whose strength ye know not. The Greene knight curteously yeelded his iell, but the red knights desired him to morfall battell, but the Ladies in the Chariot forbade it : and vnto the Dacian the Damsell thus said : Roselia the Emperours Daughter (being the Ladie in Greene, accompanied with the Princesses of Scotland in red) desireth to know your name, and that you would accompanie her to the Emperours pallace. The Dacian being nigh the Coach shewed his faire face, and at his eyes drew to his heart her fairness, both being enamoured either of other : at length with verie great reuerence he said. Soueraigne Ladies, pardon I beseech you the vnwilling grief I haue giuen vnto these knights, the fauors are this Damsells that fauoured mee with hers : and where your Excellencie askes my name, and commaundeth my vnworthie attendance, this is humbly my answer : I am bound from both, till I haue finished an aduventure, which ended, I will both answer and attend on you. On that condition said the princess, weare this fauor, giuing him a iell, and bee as speedie as you may, for I will expect your returne. The Dacian bowing himselfe promised his attendance : and so parting, he

put

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

put himselfe into the thickest of the wood, & they wondering at his worthines, returned toward the Cittie. Our Dacian being in the wood and alighted, could not forget the beautie of Roselia: yet loath to entertaine loue thoughts, he tooke his Lute, and to the sound thereof sung in this manner.

Fond affection, hence and leaue mee,

Trie no more for to deceaue mee.

Long agoe thou didst perplex mee,

Now againe seeke not to vex mee.

For since thou leftst off to assaile mee,

Power nor passion could not quail mee.

As the Lambe the Wolfe I flye thee,

As my foe Loue I desie thee:

Wend away, I care not for thee,

Childish tyrant I abhor thee.

For I know thou wilt deceaue mee:

Hence away therefore, and leaue mee.

Till euening in contrarie imaginations he rested, and was then disturbed with the noyse of two Giants & foure knights, who were come so nere him, that he might easily heare one of the Giants say: Are you sure our princes of Gibia are acquainted with our comming? They are said the other Giant, but will not bee seene till wee haue tane away the Ladies. Then said the first Giant, let vs hast to the pallace, for as I get the Scottish Ladies for our princes, so will I haue the Emperours daughter Roselia for my Donne: and in this talke they passed toward the Cittie. Our Dacian (glad of this occasion) was not farre behind, but at the entring of the gate rushed among them. To whom one of the Giants said: For thy hast fond hardie knight, either tell vs what thou meanst to make such speed, or leaue with vs thy horse for thy presumption. My horse I will neither leaue (said he) nor tell ye my business.

But

The first Booke of the third Part

But thou shalt said the other Giant tel me, and as he was laying hold on the pzinces arme, with the great end of his speare he ouerthrew him to the ground, and with a light leape cleared the gate for his page and himselfe, stepping aside, to see which way they took. The Giants thought him some diuell, and by reason of their busines would not follow him: but being guided by a knight that knew the way, they went directly to the pallace Orchard, and mounted the wall, sending their horses to a place appointed. Alwaies the pzince was within the hearing, & leaving his horse with Fabio, followed them ouer the wall: by which time they had reared a ladder vp to the Pzincesse chamber window, and one of the Giants being almost at the top, the nimble Dacian ran and ouerthrew the ladder, so that with the fall the Giant brake both his legs, making such a crie, that the Court was straight in an uproare. Our Gallant in this time was not idle, for that betweene him & the other Giant began a rigorous battell, which hee had quickly ended, but that the foure knights who were verie strong, greatly troubled him: but he sone dispatched two of them, and in the seconds fall, the Giant smit the pzince so rudely on the helme, y made him to kisse the earth: but it was little for his good, for as he thought to catch him in his armes, the Pzince arose with y point of his sword vpright, which vnder the skir of his armour passed through his heart. As he was falling, the other cripple Giant full of mallice, came creeping to doe a mischief: but the pzince quickly deuised his head from his body, wherat y knights vainly sought to flie, for the heroicke Eleno kept before them, and parted one to the breast, the other falling at his feete he took to mercie, because he shuld reueale the treason to the Emperour: before whom and the pzince of Almaine, who were now with twenty armed knights come, and before the Ladies that from the windowes beheld the battell, all was by the knight confessed: and the manner of the pzinces following them by himselfe told. Whereat the

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

the Emperour standing amazed, & Dacian knæled down, and to the Prince of Almaine he said: Receiue (worthie Prince) this little seruice, for the græf I put ye too yester-day. When the Prince perceiued it was the Knight that ouerthwe him, he embraced him, saying: valorous knight vse to me no such curtesie, for I am infinitely bound vnto you, for this seruice done vnto my Lord the Emperour. The Emperour hauing heard of him befoze, and beheld the mightie strokes on the dead giants and knights, could not speake for ioy, but taking him by the hand, led him to his Daughters chamber, and finding her with the two Princesses of Scotland, he said: Daughter, I haue brought you this knight prisoner, keepe him safe, but vse him well, for I know you are not ignozant of his desert. And turning to the Dacian, he said: Where my best ioy is, ther I leaue you, and I desire ye to tell me your name: I am of Tartarie, and called the Knight without loue. My small desert most royall Emperour, meriteth not this gracious fauour, but your kindneses are euerlasting bonds to binde me to your seruice. The Emperour left him to his rest, his lodging being appointed hard by the princesses: but neyther he nor she possessed their wonted rests, Merlins water hauing now in his bzeast lost the operation, and Dianæes rules beginning to dye in hers. Arbolinda the Scottissh Princess was Roselias cōforter, but our Heleno was alone: till carefull Fabio maruelling at his masters long stay, knockt aloud at the Court gate, and made earnest enquirie for his master. The Emperour had vnderstanding thereof, who caused him to be conueied to his master, that was not a little ioyfull of his comming. Being in the chamber, and suspecting no hearkners to be nigh: Fabio said the Prince, in anie case confesse not that I am Heleno Donne to the King of Dacia, but call me the Knight without loue of Tartarie, for so to y Emperour haue I named my selfe: for betwene his Maiestie & my Father was a great quarrell when they were Knights Aduenturers, which is

The first Booke of the third Part

not yet ended. The amorous Roselia and Arbolinda heard all ioyously, but she was more delighted, when the prince toke a Lute and thus expressed his loue passions.

Yeeld vp thy life into the hands of Loue,
For faire Roselias beauty bids thee so:
Poore Dacian prince, her curteons fauour proue,
Liue if she graunt, or dye if she say no,
For in her smile or frowne is set the date,
Of thy heauens blisse or euer dying fate.
But Fondling, how canst thou expect such ioy?
A stranger and desertlesse of her grace,
But doe exclaime against that cruell boy,
That bound thy freedome to her Angels face,
And rather dye than thy hearts pride discouer,
In daring thoughts to be a Goddesse Louer.
Yet is she faire, and fairenes should be milde,
She Princely is, and free are Princes hearts,
With thoughts ingrate they will not be defilde,
But giue large giftes for very small desertes.
O then make sure, she may perchance regard,
And for thy small desert giue rich reward.

The princeesse was so ouerloyed, that shee retyred to her chamber, and thus requited his affected Sonnet.

Teares in mine eyes, suspition in my heart,
And modest shame deny what I desire:
Faine would I ioy, but still appeareth smart,
And threatens paine if I come neere this fire.
Wherein God wot I burne and it in mee.
perforce I yeeld a yeelding loue to be.
Sweete Cytherea charge thy gentle Sonne,
That he be kinde and I will thee adore,
With myrtle boughes Ile to thy altar runne,
And praise the paphian Goddesse euermore.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

White doves He dayly offer at her shrine,
If this faire Prince proue firmly to be mine.
But if like Ariadne he me leaue,
When I haue made him Master of my heart,
I must exclaime Loue teacheth to deccaue,
And is vniust to recompence defart:
O farre farre off, be such a thought I craue,
From him who for my Lord I meane to haue.

Having finished her Song, she was encouraged by Arbolinda to goe through a secret doore into the Princes chamber, which with some feare she attempted : and being at the doore, they stayed to heare him againe thus sing.

If I must (sweet Loue) obay,
Be pittifull to mee I pray.
And let me haue my Loues reward,
With pittie let her me regard,
And then thy quiuer I will fill
With arrowes to content thy will.
I for thee will I euer fight,
My name shalbe Loues martiall knight,
On my shield thee will I weare,
Still thy colours will I beare.
If thou help my heart distressed,
Thou shalt be euer blessed.
To my faire I will appeale,
That with me she gently deale,
Farewell hope loue will not yeeld,
Yet I beare him in my shield,
The toward boy is too too crosse,
And delighteth in my losse.

The pryncesse at the songs end, by Arbolindas meanes entred, and thus the Scottish pryncesse began merily to question him.

The first Booke of the third Part

Sir. like diligent Warders we come to hearken of your health: and being but a while since nare your toye, we heard one name himselfe Heleno Prince of Dacia, who if he be your friend, is hether welcome, if other wise, he shal not here abide to bere you. The Prince perceiuing how he was discovered, remained a while confounded: but intending to dissimble it if he might, he said. Faire Ladie, than my selfe & my Page in this place till your comming I assure ye this night there hath been none: and where ye tell me of a Prince of Dacia, I assure ye I know not any such. It is verie likely said Roselia, you are vnacquainted with him, your Countries are so far asunder, and your affections farther: he being a Dacian and a louer, you a Tartarian, and without loue. Leane off this trifling said Arbolinda, we know you (gentle Prince) to be Heleno: but bee secure, for the Princesse cometh not to meddle about your parents busines, but to giue kinde answer to your hearts desire, if your tung lately deliuered not dissimbling passions. If it did answered Heleno, let me for euer be tunglese: but pardon me diuine princeesse, that so rudely haue attempted to name your excellence. If impatience at my presumption trouble your gentle heart, discover Heleno to the Emperour (for I am he) that hee maye reuenge his hate against my Father, and the harme offered to your Highnes. Your desert sir knight is great, and your desire much, ingratefull I will not be, but intertain you for my knight: and as you better deserue, expect reward. Withall I enioyne you, that for my sake yee attempt an Aduenture in this Cittie. So least we be all ouerheard, as lately we ouer-heard you, we will for thys time part. Thus went the Princesse away happie by her knights affection, leaving him in a paradise of content: where it is reason that till the Sun arise we let him rest, and in the next Chapter you shall heare of his most admirable aduenture.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

¶ Of the accusation that the prince of Dacia made of the princes of Gibia, and the ende of the aduenture that was in the place. Chap 16.



¶ Sooner had the Sun beautified the morning but the Emperour commaunded the Princes of Gibia to appeare in the great hall: whether himself with his daughter, the Prince of Almaine, and the Princesses of Scotland conducted the amorous Dacian: who in that great presence discovered y treason of the Princes of Gibia, howe they had consented with the Giants to steale away the Princess of Scotland, and to giue the daughter of the sacred Emperour to a base and hideous Giants Sonne: which accusation the knight prisoner confessed. And when the Princes denyed it, the Lord of Dacia chalenged them to mortal battel, the one to fight two houres and then the other to help him. Which they accepting, the combat was presently appointed: to the great griefe of the Princesses of Scotland, who not withstanding considering the violence intended, were somewhat pacified, and by Roselia perswaded to hope for better Princes: and so they agreed to stand with her to see the combat, the Prince Heleno being already entred the list, and not perceiuing his aduersaries ready, busied himself to behold a marvellous chappell on one side the Court, seated bypon foure pillers of white Iasper, and all the couering of the same: in the middell seemed a knight to be thrust thorough with a sword, the richest that euer the Prince had scene, and his armour of the same worke that his was, but farre richer, and vpon his shield he had the auncient deuise that he was wont to haue, which gaue him no small content, and reading a wryting it declared the aduenture, and was this. At such time as the fauored Swan shall shewe her valor in this mighty place, commaunded by the simple Doue,

The first Booke of the third Part

a knight shall get the armour of the vnhappy Brutus, who gaue himselfe a lamentable death with his owne sword. The Prince of Dacia would forthwith haue pzooued the aduenture, but he was aduised by the signe, that his enemies were in the place. And therewith hee turned about his horse with a gallant demeanure. There came with them many of the Court, and the eldest first put himselfe right against the Dacian, the yonger remaining still at the beginning of the Lisses, tarying till two houres were past to helpe his brother. So when the fearefull signe was made, the one came against the other as fast as their horses could run, and encountred with all their force in the middest of their carriere: but that of the Prince of Dacia was the greatest, for striking him in the middest of his shield it made both him and his horse come to the ground, with great admiration to all them of the Court. The Dacian would take no aduantage of him, but alighted from his horse, and taried til that the Prince was cleare of his, who very couragiously with his sword in his hand came against the Dacian, giuing him so great a blowe, that hee made him stoop with one hand to the ground, & turning to renew the same hee stroke him so vpon the right shoulder that don Heleno felt it euill: but rising vp he approached with so rigorous an answer, that he made him giue three or foure steps backwards ready to fall, and followed him so, that if hee of Gibia had not been cunning, hee had ouerthrowne him: for he seeing his intent, put the point of his sword forwards, and as he was earnest to come on, if his armour had not been magicall, our Dacian had not gone free, for hitting him in the buckling of the best plate his sword did somewhat enter, so that it was needfull for him to beare backwards because he would not be hurt: but he returned with great cholar, and closed with his enemy, both giuing together so heauy blowes, that he of Gibia was forced to put both his hands to the ground to keep him from falling, and the Dacian Lord, made an vnmeasurable

rable

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

nable staggering. From that time they continued wyth great force, no auantage appeering between them, he of Gibia maintaining himselfe for moze then one houre with great honoꝝ against Heleno: yea halfe of the second houre was past, when as the cholar of the Dacian was turned into liuing bloud, and thꝛowing his shield at his backe, he took his sword in both his hands, and gaue him of Gibia so strong a blow vpon his helme that he cloue his head, and ouerthꝛew him dead at his feet, breaking his sword in thꝛee peeces, the pommell onely remained in his hands. I will let passe the grieve that the faire Arbolinda sustained and leaue her in a sound in the Princeesse lap, who was busted in beholding the knighthood of the Dacian Lord, who had no time to secure himself, when as like the wind the second Prince of Gibia came forth with desire to reuenge the death of his brother: and moze respecting rage than the order of knighthood, he came behind the gentle Dacian with the best of his horse, with so strong an encounter, that he layd him on the ground, passing ouer him with his horse, and left him almost without breath: but in recouering himselfe, moze furious than a viper of Hircania, he aboad the coming of his enemy, who came with so great swiftnes, that it was miraculous the Dacian effected that which he did. For as he passed by, he thꝛew the pommell and hyt it of the sword, with so great strength as if it had bin forced out of a peece of ordinarce, and stroke him on the helme so vntoward a blowe, that whether he would or no, he made him leaue his saddle, and without sence to fall to the ground. The content was great that all receiued at so venterous a blow: and if thereat the worthy Roselia did reioice, there is no doubt, and the moze when as she saw that the prince, as one that had done nothing, went directly vnto the edyfyce with an irreful pace, with the trunk of a speare in his hand: but he was not so lone come thether, whē as between the pillars, the earth did open, & there came forth a serpent, as long as a lance: who

The first Booke of the third Part

who beating the ground came against the Prince, that with no little feare did abide her comming. At first she rose vp so high that he could not strike her head, but her body the trunk was so short, but the serpent stroke him with her taile, with so great force, that shee threw him a good way from the pillers, giuing him a greuous fall to the ground: which did not a little greue the Emperoz, and all those that desired to see an end of the aduenture. The Dacian was so kindled in cholar, that he wisht it had been two serpents: and with a light leape assailed the serpent, who giuing wonderfull strikes came to catch him with her clawes: but befoze she could fasten her tallants, our Heleno did execute his blow with the trunk of the Lance vpon her head, with so great force, that hee made her fall to the ground and followed her to haue stroken another blow, at such time as shee disincorporate her selfe in such sort, that he could not hit her but on the necke, breaking al in peeces the trunk of the Lance: but he went not away boasting of that blow, for the Serpent set her furious nailes vpon his shield, and pulled it so strongly, that she got it and brake it, which made the prince the more to wonder, for that he thought his shield had been magicall. And so with a new feare, his Lady bearing him company with a thousand sighes, he did abide the Serpent with his armed fist, for he had no other armor left, and as she came aloft, without any feare he went vnto her, & lifting vp his hand, he stroke her such a blow vpon the head, that hee made her lose her blow, but yet she caught him betwene her clawes with so great rigor y^t it seemed she had thrust them into his bowels. He thinking that he had bin wounded to death, quickly drew out his dagger, and with the point nailed her in the head two or three times, and made her to stretch forth her selfe with the pangs of death, in the midst of the edifice. The Dacian arose vp so wearie and wounded, that all were greatly admired, how he could sustaine himselfe on his feet: but as though he had been whole, he assailed the
shape

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

shape that had the armour, and vpon a suddaine there passed befoze him, a furions Gyant, saying. Stand cowardly knight, for first thou must know the sweetnes of my fauchion, and therewith gaue him such a blow vpon the helme that halfe his head was vnarmed. The Dacian was in great feare of death, in seeing the small defence which his armour had, to that which the Giant had, and then found the lacke of his good sword: but considering who did behold him, he went vnto the Giant, who again was lifting vp his heauie fauchion: the Youth making the was thogh he would abide it, but at the fall, hee closed with him & his dagger in his hand, and neuer left stabbing til he fel down dead. Then assailed he again the portrature, when sodainly a tempest filled all the place, so that the Prince could not be seene, and in the thicknes of this storme the great wise man Nabato appeared to the Prince, giuing him the armour and weapons of the portrature, and charging him not to stay after he had ouerthrowen the prince of Gibia, but hie to the sea where was his enchanted bark: for said the wise man in this storme Roselia and her friend the princeesse of Arbolinda are taken away: but at last you shall meete with your content. With that the storme cleared, the Edifice was vanished, the two princeesses among the Ladies missed, and the Dacian ouerthrowing the prince of Gibia for dead, poasted away like lightning on his horse Tirio, his page following him to the enchanted Barke, leaving the Court in a confusion, till the Emperour was comforted by the wise Nabato; who tolde him though the taking away of his Daughter were greuous, and by her loue much bloud should be shed: yet should it be in the end ioyous, and for the honoz of the Empire. The Emperour knowing Nabato euer to haue had care of his affaires, gaue credit to him, but yet retyred with the prince of Almaine, both very sad into the pallace. The wise Nabato had in his power Roselia and Arbolinda, and making the by his arte forget all feminine feare, he apparrelled them

The first Booke of the third Part

pages, and sent them in quest of the Dacian, which they desired: intending to see what other Lady hee loues, and to reuenge the disgrace (as they tooke it) done them by his sodaine departure. Then will we leaue, and turne to the five Princes left with Gelasio: and of the maiden-head of their knightly aduentures.

What hapned to the Princes in the defended Island,
brought vp by the wise Gelasio. Chap. 17.



The wise Gelasio seeing the Princes in yeeres increase, and in valor to bee excellent, sent first forth Celindo and his Sister, he apparelled lyke Apollo shee like Pheobe: but mounted on twoo fierce hoxses spotted blacke and white, who ioyfull to sit such beastes, with boare Speares in their handes, went on their wonted hunting, and followed their game so long till they came to the Castle of Fangomadan: where reading the wyting that promised the aduenture to them that durst attempt it without armes: and also that there were weapons within, the Princesse winded the horne so shrilly that all the place rung thereof. When sodainly the mighty Fangomadan with an iron mace in his hand, and a sword by his side all armed issued forth, and in his company a deformed Sagittary, with arrowes of Iron and a bowe of Steele. The Giant seeing those faire youths commaunded them away, telling them he was not to try the aduenture with such Infants: when Celindo and his Sister with their sistes at once strooke the Sagittary and him two such blowes on the waist (soo higher they could not reach) that they retyred foure or five paces backe, the which so incensed Brandasidell, (being led to furie contrarie to his nature by, inchauntment) that hee sought to take the Lady in his armes, but shee closing with him drew out his sword and sayd: Now furious

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

rious beast and weaponed, and the aduantage of weapons shall be to thy hurt, and therewith she cut him on the thigh to the bone: and with a light leap stept to the Sagittarie wounding him in the arme, as he was ready to shote one of his arrowes at Celindo. For which her brother was nothing pleased, but to quit her stept to Brandafidell, and smit him so on the knee, that he could scarcely stand: wherewith Celindo entered the Court, and came to the sepulcher, and in despite of the Sagittarie that followed him drew out the sword which Rosicler lost in the battailes conclusion with Fangomadan, and therewith returning, he encountred his aduersarie, with admirable boldnes. Meane while the Giant and the princeesse were close, and indured an admirable wassling. To beholde which the Princeesse Floralinda was gotten to the windowes, and knowing the battaile was for her deliuerie, shee prayed to the heauens to ayde those amiable younglings. Whome (though vnknowne) shee affecteth as her Childzen. By this the Sagittarie thinking to gripe Celindo, was preuented by a deadly wound given him in his brest, which made him fall, and the Prince without feare did sit on his senselesse trunke to behold the end of the dangerous wassling betwene his Sister and the giant: who left him with her strong resistance nigh dead on the pavement: with whose fall there hapned so great a noise that it frightened the young Princes, and Deuine Floralisa, looking for enemies stept to the sepulcher, and drew thence the sword of Camilla. But presently sweete musique altered that feare, and the gentle Brandafidell the newe Greeke awaked from his Inchauntment, and comming directly to Floralisa, whome shee doubted for an enemy, he said. Diuine Princeesse pardon mine error in offering blowes to a youth of so excellent prowesse: the good yee haue done mee with this contention no tongue can tell: for now is the inchauntment ended.

The first Booke of the third Part .

With this Floralisa left, and then Floralinda the princeſſe of Macedonia deſcended the ſtaires giuing praiſe to God for ending the aduenture: and looking on Celindo ſhe thought vpon her Lord Meridian, and in his ſifters face ſhe ſeemed to ſee her ſelfe: with all motherly affection ſhe embraced them, ſaying: O that you were the loſt Childzen of the Scythian prince and Macedonian princeſſe: and ſo with many ioyfull teares ſhe intreated them to tel where they were bozne: To whom the yong princeſſe anſwered: Diuine Lady, of our birth we are ignorant, only nurſt in this Iland by the wiſe Gelafio. Infinite ioyes at once poſſeſſed Floralinda with this anſwere, for ſhe made no queſtion they were her childzen: and no leſſe ioyous they were of their weapons and her freedome. At length they both importuned the Giant to giue them the order of Knighthood: which he willingly did, & the mother girded on the Daughters ſword, and the ſiſter her brothers. Where bowed they frendſhip to the Giant. Who told them it was now time to part, for the impriſoned Lady muſt be freed to goe ſee her huſband: and wiſhing them to commend him to the wiſe man his Uncle, whome they called father, they all parted ioyfully: the Caſtle gate ſhutting with a great noiſe of a battle, which cauſed y brother & ſiſter to ſtay, the Giant and princeſſe found themſelues at the Seaſide, and there entred a ſhip to ſayle towards Grecia. Where wee will leaue them, to tell you how the other three princes Argante, Clarifell and Toriſiano were welcommed at the Caſtle of Fangomadan: who following their hunting as the brother and ſiſter did, came directly wher they read the writing which ſaid: No knight nor perſon weaponed muſt attempt to enter. Whereupon with an excellent courage they ſtucke their boare ſpeares in the earth, and hanging their ſwords at their ſaddle bowes, they came to the Caſtle gate which ſodainly opened, where at entred, & found three Arkes, and in each of them an armed knight, and on their helmes their names, the firſt was Milo of Rome, the

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

the second Astrusio King of Media, the third Telamon of Greece, Milo out of the pillar in the enchanted sepulcher had drawn his sword, and began a most rare battell with vnarmed Clarisell, who with great lightnes clered him selfe, and closing with Milo wung from him perforce his sword, and therewith assailed the other two knights that were entred combat with Argante and Torisiano: who without respect of knighthood, left the vnweaponed youths and assailed Clarisell: who so defended him that the noise of the battell was dreadfull. This was the noise that Celindo and his sister heard, and comming within sight, they thought to assist the youth, when sodainly a Caue opened, whereout issued a hideous monster, that clasped Celindo and ran in with him: but Floralisa followed so neere that the monster had no time to shut the Caue. Argante and Torisiano this while came to the sepulcher, and offering to draw the two swords out of the pillars, they were hindred by the violence of fire: And sodainly came befoze them two mightie giants each with a long key at his girdle, offering to take the yong princes in their armes, but betwene them foure began a most perillous and dangerous wassling wherein the princes being almost wearied, they sodainly broke the keyes from the Giants girdles and smiting the in the forheads with a horrible crie they fell downe dead. Then went the Youths againe vnto the Sepulcher, and Torisiano drew out the sword of Astrusio & Argante Telamios, for with the two Giants deaths the enchantment ceased. Then went the se ioyfull princes, and with the keyes opened the doore where Clarisell was maintaining the battell against the three enchanted knights: who seemed like furies when they perceiued the youths possessed of their swords, and for three howers they maintained a doubtfull battell, but being all by the princes ouerthrowne, they binished a way, leauing their armours, where with the princes armed one another, finding the armours so fit, as if it had been made for them. Being armed said Clarisell vn-

The first Booke of the third Part

to his companions: In such a Castle as this, it is verie like there are moze keepers. Being better provided of armour, our care is the lesse said Argante. So they searched about the Castle, but could finde no bodie, onely they dyd heare the furious blowes of a battell, that seemed by the hollownes of the sound, to bee fought in some vault of the Castle. This was the battell betweene the beauteous Floralisa and the enchanted Camilla. For the princeesse following the Monster that boze away her brother, at y^e foote of a darke paire of staires ouertooke him, and parted hys head from his shoulders. When Celindo was about to render thanks for his rescue, he was hindred by the descending of the furious Camilla, who forced both brother and sister thorough a long entrie into an open Court: where she fought almost six howers. That I had sufficient arte to describe the excellence of this fight, and to quote the unbelievable dexteritie of this excellling Damsell, aswel in giuing as auoyding dangerous blows. The last that of this long fight made an ende, was a desperate thrust cast vnder the gorget of Camilla, that parted her throate, and vnrmed her head: where with falling downe, the princeesse in stead of ioy mourned, to beheld so beautiful a face as Camillas stained in bleud. But on a sodaine the bodie vanished, and a voyce said: Knight, arme thy selfe, and pittie not mee, for I am vnhurt. With more content the Ladie tooke vp the armour, and by her brothers helpe was armed therein. And so they ioyfully ascended the staires, and in the Court found the three faire princes with the wise Gelasio: being so ioyfull, that he continued a long time in embracing them. Though the princes had neuer seene one another before, yet by the pictures they remembered one anothers countenance: the yong Assyrian at the sight of Floralisa making such fuell of his heart, as loues fire and his lues light, were either at once extinguished, so long his affection continued. The Wise-man caused Celindo to knight them all, and Floralisa to girt their swords, and

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

and so he brought them home, and after they had dined, he brought the brother and sister out at the doore (that conducted them to the sea side, where they slew the Sagittaries the first day they hunted: and the wise man said, follow this way Celindo, and win armour. Being come to the place, they read this writing on a pillar.

Who euer doth intend to haue,
The armour kept within this Caue,
Which kinde Medea forgd by Arte,
For Iason false, that slue her heart,
Let him attempt a danger great,
Through yafecne fire and sure felt heate.
Before he bring it to an end,
With monstrous shapes he must contend.
Fierce beastes, foule fends the porters be,
To barre him from his entery:
Yet is there graunted vnto one,
To win this armour, els to none.
That shall be cald the hidden youth,
To him tis graunted of a truth.

And a litle lower there was on the same pillar this inscription.

The youth must enter and no other,
The Sister may not helpe the brother.
If she attempt she must returne,
Else ceaselesse shall our fier burne.
For neither strength nor hardines
Preuaileth in this busines.
Be warned therefore and take heed,
For onely he of this must speed.

Floralisa carelesse of the writing, went in with him; but they were so afflicted with heate, that they both returned.

The first Booke of the third Part

I perceiue Sister said Celindo, that as the writing saith, I must enter alone: therefore I pray you stay at the entrie with our horses. I would gladly haue bozne you companie said she, but seeing it may not bee, heauens Guide prosper you in the aduenture. So entred this balliant and couragious Youth, as boldly as if he had had on his sisters armour: but he had not gone farre, when sodainly one laid hold of his sword, and pulled it from him perforce, and a voyce ioyfully said: Wee must haue a greater care of hys owne weapons, that seeketh to win others. The prince with his swords losse and violence of the heate, doubted to goe forward with the enterprize: but comming to a doore that opened into a great Court the heat left him, and a furious Griffon came against him, whose bzaines with hys shield flat in both hands, he at the first blow beat out. He had no sower done it, but he beheld befoze him one lyke a mightie furie, who said: Thinke not unhappie Knight, to win easily the victorie: and therewith lifted vp a huge mace, hauing also Celindos sword at his girdle: which the Prince espying, ioyfully ran within him, but could by no meanes recouer his sword, which so vexed him that he laid hold on his mace, and continued struggling with him for it more than an hower, at which time the furie vanished, leauing his sword on the ground, which he took vp with no lesse ioy than when he first won it. So being very wearie, he rested awhile in the midst of the Court, and wondered at the gallant building: at last he rose, and came to a gate of Steele, that had thereon this writing. Whosoever wil win the Armour of the beloued Ia son, let him knocke with the pomell of his sword, and he shall find the entrance dangerous. Celindo (for all the threatning) knocked presently, and the gate opened: but on either side stood two deformed Sagittaries, with hatchets of Steele in their hands readie to strike hauing their armes aloft. At which sight the Prince was somewhat amazed, but taking courage, he ran vnder one of the Sagittaries armes, which did not
only

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

onely cause the Sagittarie to lose his blow, but both his hands: so his fellow over-reaching to hit the Prince, parted them away by the wrists, while the prince giuing the Sagittary on the further side a blow on the thigh, that almost parted the bone, rusht into the hall: whether the one handleffe, the other halfe legg he followed him, both whō at two deadly thrusts he left dead, and stopped to a Table whereon lay the richest armour y^e was ever sene: which befoze he could well touch, there issued a Ladie with two faire Childzen to him, saying: It repenteth mee not that this armour made for the faithlesse Iason, that forsooke me and these two childzen, sitteth such a knight. I charge you to be confident in seruice of Ladies, especially your owne Ladie, and let my example which I will in this ditty decypher, bee to you a looking glasse. With which word excellent musique sounded and the Lady thus sung:

I was of Colchos the admired,
Wherein the fleece of gold (desired,
Of many knights, their liues that lost)
Remaind vntucht, the seekers crost
With bloody death, till I did see
The face that won my libertie.

O my fortune fortunelesse,
To loue so soone my hearts distresse.

Old Æsons snone whom I reuiued,
Of life and beauty me depriued,
The Dragons fierce for him I quaild;
Against the keepers he preuaild;
All my deere Countrey I forsooke,
And him for all I gladly tooke,

O my fortune fortunelesse,
To loue so soone my hearts distresse.

The first Booke of the third Part

For when I thought I was beloued,
And for his good my Arte had proued:
To Creusa he his fauour lent,
And falsly from Medea went.
Who iustly moou'd with kindled yre,
Slew these two Babes, burnt her in fire.
O my fortune forinneelesse,
To loue so soone my harts distresse.

Then discoursed she to him all the storie of Iasons loue
to her, (for shee was the enchanted Medea) and remem-
ber (said she) the Ladie you shal loue is of Grecia. To the
Prince of Scythia haue respect, for by Nature you are there
too bound: and how euer by Gelasio you are charged to the
contrarie, yet loue the Grecian princes, and much good for-
tune follow you. Here with she and the Childzen vanish-
ed, and he ascended armed vp vnto his Sister, who thought
long of his comming, but at his sight was exceeding ioy-
full, especially embracing him for performing the Adven-
ture. When either had sufficiently delighted themselves
in saluting other, they returned to the Castle, not entring
by the ordinarie gate, but by the Fountaine Court, where
were the precious Daggers, which Floralisia wouen for all
her Companions, by the death of a Sea-monster, that as-
sailed her as she passed by the Fountaine. The wise Ge-
lasio brought all the princes, (for by then Clarisel Argante
and Torisiano wer returned from hunting) into the cham-
ber where the pictures were: where, Floralisia fixed her
eyes vpon the Image of the Minacrian Poliphebo, Clari-
sell gazed on her, and Celindo on Rosaluiras Counterfet.
Who knowing his loue was of Grecia, determined to tra-
uell thether, and to this the Wise-man agreed, for that
they should desie the princes. Clarisel went alone, full of
passion, and solitarines best fitted his disquieted thoughts.
The Brother and Sister went the next day, and the daye
after their departure Argante and Torisiano followed, ha-
uing

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

ning first bowed eternall frendship. Them will we now leaue, till time giue vs leaue to talke of them, and returne to the faire Roselia and Arbolinda of Scotland, that followed Heleno prince of Dacia, apparelled like pages.

What chaunced Roselia and Arbolinda, in seeking Heleno Prince of Dacia. Cap. 18.



Y Du are not ignozant I am sure, that of all grēfes none equalleth the sorow we receiue to be seperated from those we do affect: noz anye paine is easier ouerpassed, than the trauell to follow them whom we desire to see. Roselias example and Arbolinda her kinde frends may serue for pꝛoofe: for they pursued the Dacian through all dangers of sea and land, Roselia led by loue of him, and Arbolinda by affection to her. One day (the Dolphins dauncing on the vntroubled waters) there came a ship hulling along by the barke where in these boy-like Ladies sayled, in which ship were Lisarte pꝛince of Tharsus, and Florisarte his sonne: who beholding the beautie of the two pages, (for so they take the pꝛincesses to bee) caused their ship to stay, and Lisarte thus said. Faire pages, do this yong knight and me so much fauour, as to tell vs to what knights you do belong, and in what Countrey you were bozne? Arbolinda (who at the sight of yong Florisarte was enamoured) thus answered: Faire sir, wee haue no Masters, but were bozne in Thracia, and are now going toward Scotland to certayne Triumphs, where we hope (if good Fortune pꝛouide not better for vs befoze) to finde some famous knights that shalbe our Lords. I would (said Florisarte with an affectionated sigh) that my father the King of Tharsus & Florisarte his sonne were so happie to entertaine ye. Arbolinda noting the affection the pꝛince spake with, replied: We shalbe happie to be entertained of such royall Masters.

The first Booke of the third Part.

Lisarte like one ouerjoyed embraced them both, and discharging the Barriners, they tooke the Princesses aboard their ships, and demanded their names: Pine said Arbolinda is Artimio and this my fellowe is Roselio. Lisarte tooke Roselio for his Page, and Florisarte entertained Arbolinda, in whome hee so delighted that he wholly to her surrendred his heart, not knowing whome hee loued: yet promised he to leue none but whom Artimio his page appointed. The other of exceeding joyfull, gaue him her own picture in a table, whereon he dayly contemplated. Lisarte ioyed no lesse though farre in other sense in his Page, and as they sate sweetly conferring, the Dactian passed swiftly by in his enchanted boate, to whom Roselia cryed: Knight stay for them that follow thee. Arbolinda seeing her faynt, and the Princes wondered at her sodaine change, cherished her by first and told Lisarte, that the knight in the rusted armour had done his fellows and him much wrong. Artimio, said Lisarte, I will not liue if I reuenge not your wrong. Roselia greuning to heare the Dactian threatned, said: many haue said much and failed in the enterprize. And while they were in this conference, came by the gentle Brandafidell, who was going with Floralinda into Greece: the Princess sitting aboue hatch somewhat discontent, being grieved at her long being at sea. Lisarte noting the Giants signes and the Ladies sadness, guessed she had some wrong: therefore taking his sword in his hand, and his shield on his arme, he called, saying. ady if you be distressed, speake and I will deliuer you: knight, said the Giant, you are more forward than you need, if the Lady wanted help, tis like she would demaund it. And thou art more vn courteous than thou needst answered Lisarte, for if she be not distressed, yet I deserue thanks for my good will: & that shalt thou know if thou darest abide. How full of furie was Brandafidell! with a fearefull voyce hee commaunded the ships to be grabled.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The faire Floralinda was notable to disturbe the battaile, for she saw the Giant so angry, that shee durst not come nigh him. He quickly put on his helme and took a great heavy mace, at whose point did hang other sixe bullets of Steele, and with a furious aspect taried for his enemy. The warlike Charliam came against him, but was receiued with such a blow, as had almost cost him his life. But returning to himselfe, he repayed it so on the helme that it made him stagger on the one side two or thre paces, and entring with the swiftnes of an Eagle, with a stiffe arme, he gaue him such a thrust vpon the brest that he made him recoyle back two or thre paces, and with this would haue entred the bark with a light leape: but although the blow was great, yet it did not take away sence from the Giant he put his left leg forwards, and enlarging his arme, with a close fist he stroke the Charliam such a blowe vpon the brest, he ouerthrew him on his backe in the midst of his barke, and with the quicknes of a thought he put himselfe in the same order as he was before, abiding his enemy, who full of anger returned, and between them continued a greuous fight, for more then thre houres: but Lisarte was likely not to get much, for that the place was narrow, and the Giants weapon vnerasonable. The gentle Charliam was ashamed, to acknowledge the vantage that his enemy had in the straitnes of his place and would haue giuen halfe his kingdome to end the battaile with him vpon firme land. In this time the courteous Brandafidel was not idle, hauing a desire to conclude the battel, and that the Princesse shoulde vnderstand what a good keeper she had, he whirled his weapon about ouer his head, making her to as though he would strike him. The gentle Lisarte did abide him, till he saw it coming making an infernall noise, rattling the one with the other, and in passing he would haue stroken a thwart blowe at his armes: but the giant was so politick that in giuing another turne helping it with some what yeelding his body, he forced two

The first Booke of the third Part

bullets into his shield with so deuillish a farie that it pul-
led it out of his hands, and thre w it a great way off, and
left him so astonished, that he thought verily hee had also
away his arme. The furious Lisarte like a serpent retur-
ned, bearing his body low, fearing the second blow, and
with both his hands seized a blow hard by the Giants el-
bowes, and although hee did not cut him by reason of the
finenes of the armoz, yet he tormmented them in such sort y
his diuelish weapon fell from him. The courteous Giant
had thought his armes had been off: but the excessive grief
being past, putting backe his left leg, he drew out his fau-
chion, no lesse feareful then the mace, for that was by Lir-
gandeo warranted: you may well vnderstand the ioy
that the Tharlian receiued when that fierce weapon was
gone, and so firming his foote he ioyned with him, where
began so sightly a battell that it amazed the beholders: till
the Sunne declined they fought, and then with loud voy-
ces they called for lights: but the soueraigne Lord, know-
ing what those knightes should doe in the augmenting of
his faith, apparted the battaile with equall honoz vnto the
both, for at the bzinging forth of lightes, they were all put
out with a easterly wind, which rushing betwene the
barkes, did part them a good way the one from the other,
in such sort, that by no meanes they could ioyne, the Giant
cryed out that he would tarrie, and the other that he did a-
bide him: yet at the rising of the Moone, they were five
miles the one from the other, with so great grieve vn-
to the Tharlian that he would not beleue but that he had
lost honoz with his enemy: so there was not any that durst
speake vnto him, no not his Son. But the faire Roselia did
bolden her selfe and said. Valiant Prince abate your Ire,
and be fully certified, that if your contrary hath got any ho-
noz, it was not with any losse of yours: but rather as I i-
magine, had the battel bin on land, we should haue remai-
ned w the palm of victorie. So without anger, they supped
with great content, praising the brauery of the Giant.

The

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The gallant aduenture that hapned vnto the Princes, about the libertie of a Knight. Chap. 19.



Vest the faire Florisarte ioyfull of the picture when he knew not the person: & with inward sighs begā to say. Ah tender yeres that so truly are brought vnder the yoke of Cupid. With how much reason may the world complaine of mee, to see me yeldded without knowing who is my owner? Ah Princesse Flora, your sorrowfull Son, desireth loue and hath put his libertie he knoweth not where, and hath giuen it to one absent, and suffereth mortal grief without any hope of ease. Who could euer be a perfect lover, if he had not sed and contented his eyes on his beloued: Oh cruell discretion to loue I know not whom, and there with, with no lesse grace than he that brought stones to be molified in hearing his song, he began to sing in this sort.

Pigmalion like I loue a senseles thing,

In hope the substance one day will appeare,

Of this sweet shape which I do hold so deare,

Which sight content vnto my heart will bring.

And rid my soule of sad dispairing feare,

O happy then, I happy should be named:

But I beleecue her like was neuer framed.

She was not far that should remedy him, & might haue done it with louing him: yet she entred into the chamber, dissembling her grieke, and with a louing boldnes said. I wold not Prince of Argentaria y the picture which I gaue you should be the occasion of your vniquietnes: there is no doubt but with me your sorrow must be departed: & seeing it is so dangerous for vs both, it wens better to lose the me, moze of the lady, the to haue for her absence such discōfort.

The first Booke of the third Part

I say that this worthy Prince that you might inforce your courage for that these woundes of Loue many times doe so earnestly treade downe the strength and reason of the Louer, that when he returns to himselfe he hath no force for the same, and this doth happen vnto them, that feareth to be loued: but vnto you what thing is there, that can giue you any grieve being fully certified that you are beloued, and they who sent you this figure doo liue by your affliction. Ah Artimio my welbeloued brother, answered the afflicted Prince, how is it that I know not my selfe, neither can I giue my selfe any testimonye, with this new change: I feele it will end me, and I know not to whom I shall acquaint my grieve, neither know I who is the occasion: and if I do perseuer herein, according to the force where with it is begun, there is no doubt but the grieve will afflict mee in such sort that I shall dye with the most greivous passion that euer loue suffered. The amorous Arbolinda with her eyes full of water, answered saying: Let passe this grieve, and to assure ye shall haue comfort of your Lady, weare this iewel, which hath many yeeres hung about your Ladies necke. And therewith she tooke from her neck, a worthy and esteemed Diamant, and put it on the Princes necke, which gaue him the greatest content that might be imagined. Being in this sweet conuersation, the Pilot of the Barke entred, and said that he had discouered a faire aduenture at the Sea, where with they armed themselves with their rich and shining armor, and went forth to the Barks side to see what it should be. And they saw a thing that made them not a little maruell, for that not farre from their barke, they sawe a Tower so bright, that it seemed to be of Chrystall, it was seated vpon foure Pillers, more firm then if it had bin on the land: with great desire they hastened on their iourney, til about the third houre, they drew nigh vnto the Pillers, who seeing the great riches and workmanship, did iudge that deuine hands had done it and not humane. They went round

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

round about it, to see if there were any way to mount into it, but they found none, but coming nigher vnto it, they might see certaine letters grauen in gold on one of the pillars, which the valiant Lisarte read in this manner. If any hath a desire to giue libertie to the flower of great Brittain doing greater seruice vnto Grecia, putting aside all feare: let him blow this horne, he shal finde the entrie easie, but the coming forth dangerous. There needed no more for the valiant Lisarte to indanger his life, vnderstanding that it redounded for content vnto Grecia. So putting on his helme, he blew the horne with so great noise as doth Eolus when out of his darke iawes hee issueth to giue battell against all the world. He had not well taken it from his mouth, commending himselfe vnto the God that Rosicler did worship, when as hee laid hold on a Ladder that was throwen from the top of the Castle, by which hee mounted more swifter then a bird. Hee had not well put his foete on the Chyrtaline flower when three furious Giants fiercely assailed him: the first he cut a sunder in the wast, when much to his amazement the two parts sodainly became two Giants: and pittiflesly assailed him, till his good chaunce suffered him to wyng froe one Giant that had the enchanted life a heauy mace, with which hee so bestirred himselfe that he made that cursed company flye from him amaine. But when he thought the victoie sure, there came forth a goodly knight, saying. Thou shalt not slay my kinde keepers and take me from my pleasant dwelling, and therewith doubled so many blows vpon Lisarte, that he left him on the flore almost without life, and the enchanted knight tooke the prince in his armes purposing to throw him out at the window: but Lisarte being recovered and closed in that sort, pulled off the enchanted knights helme, whose face when he saw, he guesst it to be Rosicler, and said. Alas my Lord Rosicler, what hath the Prince of Tharsus deserved, that you should vse him so vngently? When the knights helmes was off the inchauntment ceased. And

The first Booke of the third Part

he said: Knight your valor hath deliuered me from this enchantment, for which I reit bound vnto you. I am suspected indeed to be the Princes son you name: but my weaknes approues me vnworthy of so excellent a Father. Lisarte remembzing the words on the pillar, and beholding his countenance, assured him he was the Sonne of Rosicleer: and there they imbraced, Lisarte discoursing what hapned to them in Argentaria, and Rosabel what chaunced in Lacedemonia. So a while we will leaue them and follow the gallant Brandafidell and the Princesse Florinda.

What hapned in Greece to the gentle Brandafidell and Florinda, Chap. 20.



With many milde perswasions did Florinda mitigate the rage of Brandafidell, being parted by the tempest from Lisarte: and in short time they both landed in Grecia: where Brandafidell expected store of aduentures: so causing the Princesse to be mounted on a milke white Palfrey, hee himselfe bestrid his huge Alfana, (being a beast bred in the mountaines of Barbarie,) with a huge Launce in his hand, & his dreadfull mace at his saddle bow: On the tenth day as they iourneyed towards Constantinople, they met a mighty great Knight and with him twenty knights in troop, and coming nere them, the great Knight, said: I can hardly be perswaded Giant that this Lady goeth with thee willingly: but if she doe she is unfit for thee, therefore deliuer her vnto mee, and this horse which seemeth to be good. You ask much said Brandafidell: but would yee not bee content to leaue the Lady, so I gaue you the horse. So said the great Knight, and therewith one of his troop laid hold on Florinda, which made her giue a great shriek. Not the violet lightning with more swiftnes breaketh out of the cloues than

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

than the rage of Brandafidel sent death to that presumptuous knight and thre of his companions, for with his lance cast violently from his hand he ouerthrew foure dead that sate in ranke, and with foure bullets of his dreadfull mace made foure moze at one blow to beare them company. But the great Knight entred within him, and stroke so dangerous a blow, that the Giant wel perceiued he had a strong aduersarie: but with the ende of his mace on his brest plate Brandafidell gaue such a foyne, that hee ouerthrew him senselesse to the earth. By this the other twelue knightes had round incōpassed him, but like the Cyclops hammers fell his heauy bullets on the weake anuyles of their heades, that heere some brainlesse there others senselesse lay dead on the ground. When he thought all had been ended, the great Knight recovered, and betwene the continued a battaile no lesse furious than the dreadful contention betwene Anteus and Hercules. On foote they fought, for Brandafidell would haue no aduantage, and in the courage of his enemy hee tooke pride: but remembering his presumption against the Princeesse, hee whirled his dreadfull mace, and parted with two bullets his head in peeces. At the knightes fall Floralinda ioyed, but Brandafidell left not till hee had slaine all the wounded knightes but one, whome he charged to confesse the truth what that great knight and his company were.

The miserable man shaking and trembling with dread of death, deliuered this answer: The dreadfull Friston Lord of the Ilands of Tamixio, with Frinto his brother, and this knight their Nephew whome you haue slaine, hearing of the triumphs in Grece, came with moze than threescore knightes and other seruants, and surprized a Castle heere in Grecia verie suddainly, being of great strength: whether for this ten dayes they haue brought many prisoners, which they doe in despite of the Greke Princes.

The first Booke of the third Part

I and my fellowes were their seruants, and now another
troop are abroad with Friston and his brother, meaning to
take any comming to these triumphes. and for the Ladies
sake assailed you. And for your outrages said Brandafidel,
beare your companions compaunie: wherewith he dashed
out his braines. Then comming to Floralinda, he besought
her to repose her selfe, and not to goe to Constantinople till
the triumphes did begin. To this she agreed, and hauing
refreshed themselues, Brandafidel went vnto the side of a
hill, and thence discovered a Chariot wherein were ma-
ny that made great lamentation, & two mightie knightes
with twenty other knights. The courteous Giant per-
swaded himselfe, those were the proud brethren, and they
in the Chariot prisoners: wherefore placing Floralinda
and the Pages within the thicket where vnseene they
might see the battaile, he crost toward the Chariot, moun-
ted and armed at all pointes, and thus said to the two bre-
thren being foremost: Knights in this free Countrie why
guard ye any that complaine? giue me a good answer, or
in the name of the Greeke Princes I desie you. The pride
and wrath of Friston would not suffer him to answer, but
in his rashnes ran to meete with vengeance, for in the en-
counter Brandafidel ouerthrew him with his horse vpon
him, whose waight pressed out his infernall soule: but
Brandafidel had like likewise to haue salne, for the reuenge-
full Frinto with all the other knights ranne on him at one
enconter. But hauing settled himselfe he came like a ra-
uening Lion on the heard of Deare, making them dearly
buy the cowardize of that incounter. Yet was the battaile
verie doubtfull, till on a sodaine a goodly knight in preci-
ous armour came by, and demaunded of the prisoners in
the Chariot the cause of the battel, the cheefe of them said.
The Giant with the dreadfull mace (Sir knight) seeketh
our libertie: for comming to visit the Emperoz of Greece,
the knightes that fight and their companions, vniustly
seazed on vs. Without more reasoning the knight in rich
ar

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

armour ran to the proud Frinto, and at one stroke parted his helme and head. Brandafidell being wearied, was glad of such ayd, and tossing his heavy mace about, left but fine knights able to sit on horsebacke; who trusting better to flight than fighting, gaue the raines to their swift steedes, whom the Knight in the rich armour so far followed, that he returned no more to the Chariot. The Giant sorrowed that he could not know him: but coming to the Chariot, he vnboud the prisoners, wherein faire Floralinda (that like amiable Phoebe issued from the thornie closet of the wood) assisted him. Being free they gaue the Lady and Giant many thanks: and being questioned of their estate, thus said the chiefe of them. My name is Don Siluerio Prince of Lusitania, this Lady my wife is Archirofa Queene of Thessaly, are come to visit Rosicleer prince of Greece: and fearelesse of all trecherie in this Country came sporting from our Knights vnarmed as you see, and were sodainely surprized. O ye Gods said Brandafidel, how happie am I to deliuer the innocent, being the friends of my deare friend Rosicleer. With this came 50. knights of Lusitania, and the Princesse Archirofa said. I see by aue Giant, we shall not need what we most wished, I mean your warlike company to guid vs vnto Constantinople, for now our own Knights like rain when cozne is ripe come to smal purpose to accompany vs. I am glad they are come said the Giant, for I haue this princely Lady that I must guid thether, meaning Florinda: who still was masked, because she would not be known, with great curtesie they all parted, wondzing at the Giants valor, but more at his good disposition. Being all cleere departed, the Giant thanked Floralinda humbly, for (said he) your gracious sight gaue me this noble victorie: where with she tooke a precious iell from her necke, saying. Knight refuse not to weare this fauor, for your comfort well deserueth a greater gift. The Giant proude thereof humbled himselfe vnto her, beseeching her to mount her Palfrey: for saith hee,

God

The first Booke of the third Part

God willing we will free the prisoners in the Castle that these false knights haue taken, and there will we rest to night. The Princesse bad him do his pleasure. So setting forward, they attained sight of the Castle a little before Euening, and the Giant (putting on the Helmet of Friston) called to them within to open the gate, saying hee was Friston their Master, wearied with combat, and had brought a Ladie and a rich Prize with him. To whome the knight that opened the gate said: Welcome my lord, here haue we also a knight in rich armour, who slew five of your knights within sight of the Castle, and him haue we trained in, and shut into your chamber. Wile curteously this Ladie said the Giant, and some of you bring y^e key, that I may chastise him with death, before I put off my armour. This was no sooner commaunded, but it was done, and Brandafidel perceiued it was the knight that assisted him in the battell, yet faining his intent, hee sayd: Proud knight, that hast entred my Castle without my license, come take thy weapons and descend into y^e court, that I may punish thee for murdering my seruants. Thou speakest something like a knight said the Prisoner, but I hope to punish thee, for maintaining such false cowards as these are. So they descended together, and as they were going downe the staires, Brandafidel with his mace brayned two knights that attended them, and turning to the knight that went with him, he said: Assist me sir knight, as you did to day assist me in the battell at the chariot, and you shall see we wil not leaue alieue one of these euill people: therefore I pray you goe vnto the gate, that none escape you. The knight perceiuing who it was, ioyfullye tooke possession of the gate, while Brandafidel like a hungry Wolfe raged vp and downe the Castle, and so chased them, that fearfull to be all slaine, they ran vnto y^e gate, thinking to get forth: but there death likewise encountered them, sitting imperiously on y^e knights sword in the rich armour, whom they had treacherously imprisoned.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

In briebe, they flew all that could resist, onely a few seruants they saued, who seemed ioyfull to be deliuered from their tyrant masters. Then went they both to Floralinda, and befoze her the Giant said: Knight, be yet so kinde vnto vs after all your passed kindneses, as to tell Brandafidel (the bolwed friend to prince Rosicleer, Meridian, Orides, and all the Greeke princes friends) who thou art? I am (said the knight) Sarmacia Daughter to the King of Lyra, who come in quest of that Oristides you named vnto me, who with Rosicleer and Meridian I left departing towards Greece out of my fathers kingdome: and with this shee discovered her beauteous face, excellling Minervas in her greatest bzauerie. Floralinda admiring her excellence, gaue infinite commendations of the Trojan Oristides.

Deualozie, how desperate are thy effects, how full of diuelish distrust? No sooner did Sarmacia heare Floralinda praise Oristides, but a gloomie discontent shadowed the former beautie of her amiable countenance, and neyther answering nor demaunding anie thing moze, shee called for her horse: who was no sooner brought, but ere they being a fote could hinder her, she had left the Castle, and put her selfe among the thickest trees, who with the glyding snakes and dumbe woymes became that night her secretaries. The Giant wondered at her sodaine departure, but Floralinda gessed at the cause, saying: Surely the Ladye is amorous, and iealous of my speach about Oristides. At last (with some græfe passing her sodaine departing from them) they tooke their repose, and in the morning sent the prisoners to the Emperour of Greece, charging them to offer themselues to be disposed of at his pleasure, & to tell him how the proud Brethren were suppressed: which they did, and the Emperour reioyced at the newes, for he was preparing himselfe to come against them. And hee could not but meruaile what one alone it was that had performed so much.

The first Booke of the third Part

In this Castle will wee leaue Brandafidel and Florinda, and returne to tell what hapned to Lisarte in the enchanted Tower with Rosabel,

What succeded Rosabel, Lisarte and Florisarte after the enchantment was finished. Chap. 21.



While Rosabell, Lisarte and his Sonne were in great content in the enchanted Tower, there appeared an olde man befoze them with a little booke in his hand: who cried out on Lisarte, said. Thinke not to glozy in my miserie, for thou hast taken from mee the Sonne of Rosicler my enemy, but on him and all the frends of Grece by help of this booke will I bee reuenged. Rosabel being neere him snatched away the booke, & said: By this booke thou shalt not be reuenged diuelish inchanter, and wert thou not priuiledged by age I would ende here thy euill life. So being about to throw the booke into the Sea, the wise Lirgandeo appeared, and charged him to giue him the booke, and to commit Gelasio his fathurs and Mothers enemy into his custodie. And then he told Rosabel from point to point how Gelasio had vsed hys mother in taking him away, wronged his father with all hate, and all his frends. Roselia was amazed, and somewhat doubtfull that all had been deceipt, yet remembzing his many goods done by Lirgandeo, he gaue the booke and Gelasio vnto him with this charge, that though hee were wicked he should vse him well. When Lirgandeo aduising them to hasten presently to Niquea, the old man vanished away, and the Princes descended the enchanted tower, and on a pillar read this wyting: The rough Tower shall remaine, til the ancient crowned Lyon, set at liberty the lambe and Lyonesse. The Princes could not vnderstand the meaning, but hasting toward Niquea, they recovered land

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

land within foure daies, being to Rosabels imagination the most pleasant Country in the earth. Rosabels Page carried his helme, Roselia Lifartes, and Arbolinda Florisartes: and the two Ladies comming somewhat behinde, the beauteous Roman thus said. Ah Princesse of Scotland, what a painefull serutce haue we gotten? I promise you I am weary of this lacying. Kest your helmet on your palfrey said Arbolinda: for it is better hee dye than you bee wearied. And yet perchance your minde tyeth ye, being discontent. Wherefore be aduised, hate to remember your inconstant Darian, and see if Florisarte will affect you. You doe wrong me said Roselia (somewhat angerly) to upbraid my knight, and flout me with yours. Nay said Arbolinda, if you will quarrell, looke for a blondy fray, and so prettily parted her horse that Roselia could not chuse but smile. By this they came somewhat nigh the Princes, who were plotting about their affaires in Niquea, and in the middest of their conference they met twelue knights, whome Rosabel saluted in their language, and courteously demaunded of them some newes. One of them answered: Our newes now is that the Soldan of Egipt is with many Giants come to aske the faire Liriana in marriage. And Marcello the Soldan her father thinking it conuenient, agreeth thereunto: and for the same the Egiptian hath published Turnayes within these 20. daies. Rosabell answered, Sir knights we thanke you, and for this kindnes if there rest in me or my companions any power, commaund vs. The knights parted: and the Princes seeing Rosabel somewhat sad, comforted him, and Lifarte would haue no nay but that Florisarte should of Rosabell receiue the order of knighthood: and for want of a Lady to girt the sword, Florisarte would needs haue Artimio girt his sword: which she denying often, and being stil byged, she brought forth the sword of Don Heleno, and said: Faire Sir, I gird ye with the sword of one of the balliantest knights liuing. This gift made all wonder and haue ioy at the riches ther-

The first Booke of the third Part

of onely Roselia sorrowed to see her knights sword at an others side, but Arbolinda easily answered that matter. Florisarte being knighted they pleasantly reposed that night in a groue of Pines: and in the morning they were no sooner mounted and entred into the way, but they saw nere them a troop of two thousand knights, and in the midst as Generals two goodly knights in red armor striped with blew, and the Princes getting them to be of great account stayed to giue them way, when suddenly a knight in name of their Lords challenged them to Jutte. Florisarte was appointed to giue answer, who said: So it might procede no farther than the Juttes he was content: and presently they made themselves redy, ouerthrowing at five encounters eightrane of the Squadron. Therewith the two chiefe knights set forwards, whom Rosabel and Florisarte encountered so strongly, that they ouerthrew them, and lifting vp their visors alighted themselves to help them vp. The two knightes no sooner sawe Rosabel, but they cast off their helmes and embraced him: who called to remembrance they were his old companions in the court of Niquea, sons to the King of Celandia. Lisarte and the Pages comming together were glad to see this new friendship, at which time Salernio the elder brother said: Nowe wee are sure Lord Rosabel to perform that which we were doubtfull of before, seeing you & these braue knightes are in our company: for being certified by our sister that is in the Court of Niquea, how wel the Princesse Liriana loueth you, & what mone she and her cosins make to be married to the Soldan of Egypt & his pephewes against their likings, we haue attempted with these knightes at the Turney to take the away, hauing to that end twentie thousand more knightes in readines at Sea: and in the tumult also to bring away our sister, and to haue sought you throught the world. Rosabel was so glad to heare that Liriana loued him, & so thankful to the Princes & his inward affection to all appeared in his silent embracing. And while hee was preparing fit
wee

of the Myrrour of Knighthood.

words to gratulate such fauour, a Page came riding to them from a goodly proportioned knight, whose armour was very precious, and two Lyons in his shield, and challenged them all to the Jusses. The yonger brother of Celandia would needs begin, but was ouerthrowen in the encounter. Salernio had the like successe, Lisarte lost his saddle, and the strange knight his stirrups: and Florisarte and he passed each by other like two inuincible rocks. Then Rosabel prepared himselfe, but the knight lifting vp his Beuer said: Farre be it from Oristoldo sonne of Sacridiro king of Thessaly, to runne against any that so much resembleth his fathers dearest friend. For know Sir knight in my other encounters I marked your beauteous face, while the visor of your helme was vp, and sawe you to be so like the picture of Rosicleer Prince of Greece, that I offer my small abilities to your seruice, beseeching pardon for Iusting against your friends. O heauens, how happy am I said Rosabel, to be counted the son of a father so much loued: And therewith they all embraced Oristoldo, & acquainting him with their business, he bowed the aduenture of his life. Then spake Lisarte who had most experience & thus advised them: We wil take shields like vnto Rosabels, (whose deuise was iealozie leaning vpon faith) and wee sice wil onely enter the Jusses, taking with vs one Page to certifye this host of knightes that shall attend vs somewhat nere the Cittie of our proceedings. At the turney we wil be against the Soldan of Egypt, whom about Sun set we wil finde occasion to kill, & then when the tumult is greatest ascend the gallerie, (for in some gallerie it is like the Ladies shall stand) and bying a way the Ladies: which to effect, if we want help, the page shal certifye these two thousand knights, who bring fresh and couragious, wil assure our enterprize. All liked this Counsel: so leauing Artimio and Roselio with the two thousand knights, they tooke Alirio Rosabels page: and entred Niquea when the Turnays were ready to begin.

The first Booke of the third Part

It pleased the Soldan of Egypt so; so requested the Soldan of Niquea, that the Egyptian knights and the Giants bee brought, shuld ioyne with his courtiers: and the Captains of the knights strangers shoulde bee the kings of Media, of Garamancia, and Armenia. The king of Garamancia was all in Lyon coloured armour, and on his shield a knight mouing a Globe, with this posie: I feare not strength but Fortune. The other two kings were in armour full of pearced hearts and on their shields the same deuice with this posie. Forgetfulnes of loue is cause of death. They had following them ten thousand knights and some Giants: among whom our five princes put themselves. The entrie on the other side the knights Courtiers beeing so magnificent, that it shewed manifestly the great maiestie of their Prince. After the followed the Soldan of Egypt, all his furniture being red, set with a number of precious stones: his deuise was a Lady apparrelled in the colour of his armour, and a knight holding her by the hand hauing at his feete Loue and Fortune with this Posie, Commanding these, this is mine owne. His Nephewes were armed in blurr coloured armour, Loue smiling beeing painted in their shields. When came the Soldan of Niquea, and after him diuine Liriana, with her Cousins and the Princeesse of Celandia, with such admirable beautie and excellent sound of instruments, as if they had bene Angels, and the place celestiaall. But the Soldan of Niquea, the Ladies and other aged Princes wisit for fight were no sooner placed, but the great full trumpets sounded the encounter. Against the Soldan of Egypt and his Nephewes, ran the kings of Garamancia, Media and Armenia and at the first encounter tumbled their proude bodies on the earth: which so enraged the Soldan, that he called them to mortall battel: where 30 fierce Giants rushed in on his part, and overthrew many of the knights strangers putting the king of Garamancia in great distress being vnhorsed: then stepped Rosabel vnto him and lighting
from

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

from his horse perforce mounted him thereon, which the king and all his knights tooke very gently, but especially when they sawe his manner of mounting, Rosabel went to a huge Giant and pulled him to the earth, mounting in his saddle, and dooing such wonders that on him and his fellows, (who by this time at thre encounters had ourthrowen twelue Giants) all the beholders eyes were fixed. The Soldan of Egypt grew so impatient, that neglecting the duty of armes, hee turned the ioyfull Turneyes to a battaile most dangerous: and calling for a huge and mightie Giant named Penastrol that entred like a mighty pine, hauing also in his hand, a speare bigger than an Argones maine mast, ouerthrewe an infinite number of the knights strangers. But Rosabel beholding Liriana put himselfe before this furie, and as he had been a warrior sent from the clouds, pearced the bosome of this deformed Penastrol, that he fel vpon the ground, couering a great part thereof with his unproportionable hugeness. All the beholders shouted at the fall and cryed: Inuincible are the knights of lealozie, and the great Gods blesse the w labour, the power of fiends cannot stand against the. The Princesse of Celandia and her lady neeces being nare her, Liriana said vnto them. My minde giues mee you knight that ouerthrewe Penastrol with the deuit of lealozie is Rosabel, for stil his eye is on this place. As they were answering her, they were disturbed by the noise of the old Soldan of Niquea, who cryed fro his state, saying: knight saue his life for it is my Sonne. And looking what it was, they saw Rosabel hauing vnarmed the Soldan of Egypts head (and making himselfe deafe at the old Soldans crying) cut off his head, and vaunting afore Liriana, said: now see how thy foster Loue speedeth. And at the same instant, Oristaldo and Florisarte had dispatched his two neeces: When Lisarte likewise rescued the two brethren of Celandia from two furious Giants, that had unhorsed him: at two strokes dispatched their enemies. The fu-

The first Booke of the third Part

ricus Souldan seeing the death of him hee meant to make his Sonne in law, came downe in his armour, and sent to raise all his Knights. Lisarte perceiuing rage to grow unreasonable, and glimmering twilight ready to draw the obscure curtaines of night whereby their purpose might be shadowed, he with the yongest of the Celandian Princes (his sonne and Oristoldo following them) mounted in to the gallerie, and seized on the Princesses, who sounding through feare, had no vse of speech to call for rescue, nor if they had cried could they haue been heard, the noise and tumult was so great: for the Ladies that waited on them sent out shrill cries able to haue pierced the clouds, but the heauie groanes of dying men, & deadly brawlings of wounded horses, so filled the place, that bootlesse were all their lamentations. For now Rosabel was mounted and Liriana before him, the two Bretheren had her two Kinswomen, and Lisarte their Sister. Before them rid Oristoldo and Florisarte, filling the iawes of death with heapes of dying men, that fondly sought to hinder their swift escape. For Marcello had commanded the chaynes that serued for pales to the place of Tornay to bee taken downe, that all the Cittie being armed, might enter and inclose the Knights strangers, to reuenge the death of the Egyptian Souldā: the gates indeed it was folly to close, because a great wal was ouerthrowne, to ioyne the field adioyning to the Pallace greene, that the Court for Tornay might be more spacious. Through this place passed our five Princes, all men making meanes to giue them way, but not one so mad to follow them. And quickly comming to the place where they left their knights and pages: there they set downe their amazed Ladies, who began lamentably to complaine. But when they knew what Knights they were, their feare was turned vnto ioy, and Liriana above the rest, reioyced in her Rosabel. Neuerthelesse, considering the danger wherein the Souldan her Father was, it was thought necessarie that Rosabel, Florisarte &

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Oristoldo should returne to the battaile: whereupon determining, they changed their horses, helmes and shields, because they would not be knownen, and posted to Niquca with all speed. In the meane time the pleasant Celandian princeesse (to chere up Liarana that drooped for the absence of Rosabel,) carrolled out this sweete dittie in praise of Fortune.

When Tyrants will had neere constrained
Our Virgins state to haplesse stay,
And in our hearts we all were pained,
With thinking on the wedding day.

Then Fortune turned our distresse,
To endlesse ioy and happinesse.

The hatefull obiects of our harts,
Plumde in their pride did threat the skie:
And them we liked for deserts,
As exiles forced were to flie.

Yet Fortune that our griefes did see,
Prouided vs of remedie.

She sent our friends that quaild our foes,
She gaue vs life when death was nigh,
To ioy she turned all our woes.

Downe cast with greefe, she raide vs high
Her Godhead therefore we adore,
And praise sweet Fortune euermore.

By this the three princes entred the Battell, finding the Soldan unhorsed, defending himselfe against two giants, whom Rosabel at two strokes cut in sunder. With this the King of Garamantia approched, saying: Soldan, retye thy knights, and if I or my fellow kings bee guiltie of this daies tumult, or thy daughters rape, let vs die. He speaketh reason said Rosabel, heare him great prince. For your desert I will said the Soldan, on that condition, and therewith he caused retreat to be sounded.

And

The first Booke of the third Part

And so the kings submitting themselves to be tryed that they were innocent of conuaying the Princesses away: they were deliuered vnto an aged Prince to keepe; and the three Princes with swift speed returned to their Loues: where in the middell of their delight a crosse accident barred their pleasure as shall bee expessed in the next Chapter.

How the Princessie Liriana and her companions, sweetly conuersing with their loues and brethren, were suddenly surprized by the wise Lupercio and inchaunted, Chap. 22.



His vaine world wherein pleasures are gotten with much paine, giueth no certaine continuance of the good wee toyle for: but rather an houres stoyme of euil, snatcheth from vs all the content that in a whole age with care we haue gathered. Experience of this, these Princes sodaine griefes shal be, who had scarcely obtained a breathing time of ioy, but a world of sorrow was heaped on their heads.

If you be remembred in the beginning of this historie where Brandafidel described the estate of Fangomadā and the cause of the inchauntment, to Rosicleer, Meridian and Oristides, after y^e death of his Brother, he telleth the of one Lupercio a wise man in Egypt that was master of his Uncle Gelasio, and taught him his deuillish Artes. This Lupercio, being acquainted with the successe of all things at Niquea by his Arte, and knowing also where the Princesses and Princesses were, put himselfe into an enchanted Chariot, drawen with foure furious Chiffons: and departing from his deuillish habitation, came nere the pleasant place where these Princes (searelesse of such execrable euil) were delighting themselves with amorous conuersation. Neither did this Lupercio hate them for any other thing

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

thing than because his scholler Gelasio was by them so
crossed & imprisoned. It was about the houre of twelue at
midnight, when after long toyle the knights intended to
take rest, the Ladies offering to watch & be their keepers,
Liriana began a ditty to bring them all a sleep, in whose vn-
dersong Roselia, Arbolinda, the Soldans neeces, and the
Princessse of Celandia assisted her with voice and musique.

Sleep while we sit and be your Guard,
Your tyred lims rest in our laps:
Your endlesse faith be our reward,
Then care we not for after haps.
Lyke you lay Marson Venus knee,
While she did sing her Lullabec.
Lullaby Lulla Lullaby,
So sweetly Warre with Loue doth lye.

Thou wert the substance of my griefe,
But art the groundworke of my ioy.
Thy absence causd my sorrow cheefe,
But now thy sight exiles annoy:
I mournd for thee, thou weptst for mee,
Yet sing I now ioyes Lullabec,
Lullaby Lulla Lullaby,
So sweetly Warre with Loue doth lye.

The knights had not closed their eyes, nor the musique
fully closed in due straines with the conclusion of the La-
dies song, when sodainly a fierie chariot drawn by foure
Griffons descended, and out of the chariot issued two fear-
full Centaures, that snatching vnder either arme a Lady,
carried away to the Chariot Liriana, her two Cousins, and
the Princessse of Celandia, with such swiftnes that the
Princes were not able to rise ere the Chariot was moun-
ted in the ayre, the Ladies making such lamentation, as
the senselesse trees assisted by the whistling of the winde
Do among

The first Booke of the third Part

among their leanes, seemed to sigh for their sorrow: Liriana being heard aloud to cry. Oh Rosabel, why am I taken from thee, when in thee was all my ioy? And with this the chariot and Ladies were out of sight. A tragicke Sister, that beautifiest thy writings with grieffe: discouraging lines, a little lend me thy all-able help, that in concluding this booke I may straine teares from the pittyping eyes of the Readers when they shal conceive the sorrow that the princes conceived at this sodaine accident. All of them so grieved, as the dull earth drunke with their teares, sent forth from her pierced bosome salt and blackish springs, that yet remaine in the forests of Niquca as endlesse testimonies of that sad midnights misadventure: the chaste Moone clouded her bright countenance, and sweet Venus in her sphere lookt more discoloured, than when the son of Mirra was murdered by a savage Boare, and the Day-Starre refused to lead backe the host of heauen, to giue way to the next daies morning: but mourned in the skies euen as when Ceyx his sonne was drenched in the Seas. But if all these Planets, Earth, Springs and Princes sorrowed, y grief and rage of Rosabel so much exceeded all, as neither the fortunelesse Mother of these fourteene Sons and Daughters slaine by the son and Daughter of Latona, could with her grieffe equall his sorrow: nor the wrath of Alcides when he sacrificed himselfe on the mountaine of Oeta be compared to this yong princes rage. And surely had not the wisdom of Lisarte preuailed, he had desperately ended his life: who perswading him and the other princes, that by the words on the Chyistaline piller, which supported the tower where Rosabel was enchanted, it was very likely they were bozne thether: and therewith combining themselves neuer to cease trauel til they had found them out: both Rosabel and the other princes were somewhat quiet. So parting themselves two and two: Rosabel & Oristoldo went backe to Niquca, to answer for the imprisoned kings, and there to hearken if they might heare of the Ladies: the
two

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

two princes of Celandia sent home their ships and knights and onely with two pages followed this aduenture: so did Lisarte & his son another way accompanied onely with the two disguised Ladies their pages. And seeing their heauy parting hath tyred my wearied spirits, I wil end this book (after that for your better memory) I haue collected the places together where we left our knights and Ladies.

The gallant Torismundo prince of Spaine we left reioy-
cing with Grisalinda the pzincesse of France & his yong son,
the valiant Tartarian with Grisanea pzincesse of Holland
and their sonne, traueilling to his country, from the doubt-
full Iland where Rosicleer made Lord (after the death of
Bruncaldo the Kouer and his b2ethzen the Giants) the dis-
creet knight Briano, giuing him to wife the imprisoned
Damsel daughter to Rosicleers old frends the Lord & La-
dy of the balley of the mountaines. Rosicleer, Meridian, and
the new Louer Oristides, we leaue going to Sea from La-
cedemonia, ful of sorow for the losse of Rosabel. The faire
Sarmacia ful of zealous passion we left in y^e forrests of Gre-
cia, and not farre off Brandafidel and Floralinda in the Ca-
stle they had gotten from Friston: the inchanter Gelasio in-
prisoned by Lyrgandeo: Liriana, her Cousins, and the Ce-
landian pzincesse bozne away in the Chariot. How Ro-
sabel and his frends parted, you heard before: onely wee
haue not been copious enough in expresung Roselias sor-
row for the Dacians absence, whom she last saw pas-
sing by Lisartes ship in his enchanted boat: where
also wee last left him. And heere will wee
leau off, intending with him to
begin our next Booke.

FINIS.